



KONICA MINOLTA

# **bizhub 5000i/4000i**

## **USER'S GUIDE**





## Table of Contents

|                                                                                                              |           |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------|
| <b>Before You Use Your Machine .....</b>                                                                     | <b>1</b>  |
| Applicable Models .....                                                                                      | 2         |
| Definitions of Notes .....                                                                                   | 3         |
| Trademarks .....                                                                                             | 4         |
| Important Note .....                                                                                         | 5         |
| <b>Introduction to Your Machine.....</b>                                                                     | <b>6</b>  |
| Before Using Your Machine .....                                                                              | 7         |
| Front View and Back View .....                                                                               | 8         |
| Control Panel Overview .....                                                                                 | 10        |
| Touchscreen LCD Overview.....                                                                                | 13        |
| How to Navigate the Touchscreen LCD .....                                                                    | 15        |
| <b>Paper Handling.....</b>                                                                                   | <b>17</b> |
| Load Paper.....                                                                                              | 18        |
| Load and Print Using the Paper Tray .....                                                                    | 19        |
| Load and Print Using the Multi-purpose Tray (MP Tray) .....                                                  | 26        |
| Paper Settings.....                                                                                          | 33        |
| Change the Paper Size and Paper Type.....                                                                    | 34        |
| Change the Check Paper Size Setting .....                                                                    | 35        |
| Unprintable Area .....                                                                                       | 36        |
| Using Special Paper.....                                                                                     | 37        |
| <b>Print .....</b>                                                                                           | <b>38</b> |
| Print from Your Computer (Windows).....                                                                      | 39        |
| Print a Document (Windows).....                                                                              | 40        |
| Secure Print (Windows).....                                                                                  | 41        |
| Change the Default Print Settings (Windows) .....                                                            | 43        |
| Print from Your Computer (Mac) .....                                                                         | 45        |
| Print a Document (Mac) .....                                                                                 | 46        |
| Secure Print (Mac) .....                                                                                     | 47        |
| Configure the Optional Tray Settings (Mac) .....                                                             | 49        |
| Cancel a Print Job.....                                                                                      | 50        |
| Test Print .....                                                                                             | 51        |
| <b>Network .....</b>                                                                                         | <b>52</b> |
| Get Started.....                                                                                             | 53        |
| Supported Basic Network Features.....                                                                        | 54        |
| Network Management Software and Utilities .....                                                              | 55        |
| Learn about Network Management Software and Utilities .....                                                  | 56        |
| Additional Methods of Configuring Your Machine for a Wireless Network .....                                  | 57        |
| Before Configuring Your Machine for a Wireless Network .....                                                 | 58        |
| Configure Your Machine for a Wireless Network.....                                                           | 59        |
| Configure Your Machine for a Wireless Network Using the One Push Method of Wi-Fi Protected Setup™ (WPS)..... | 60        |
| Configure Your Machine for a Wireless Network Using the PIN Method of Wi-Fi Protected Setup™ (WPS).....      | 61        |
| Configure Your Machine for a Wireless Network in Ad-Hoc Mode (For IEEE 802.11b/g/n) .....                    | 65        |
| Configure Your Machine for a Wireless Network Using the Machine's Control Panel Setup Wizard ..              | 70        |

|                                                                                    |            |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------|
| Configure Your Machine for a Wireless Network When the SSID Is Not Broadcast ..... | 73         |
| Configure Your Machine for an Enterprise Wireless Network .....                    | 76         |
| Use Wi-Fi Direct® .....                                                            | 81         |
| Advanced Network Features .....                                                    | 92         |
| Print the Network Configuration Report .....                                       | 93         |
| Print the WLAN Report .....                                                        | 94         |
| Configure the SNTP Protocol Using Web Based Management .....                       | 97         |
| Technical Information for Advanced Users .....                                     | 99         |
| Gigabit Ethernet (Wired Network Only) .....                                        | 100        |
| Reset the Network Settings to the Factory Settings .....                           | 102        |
| <b>Security .....</b>                                                              | <b>103</b> |
| Lock the Machine Settings .....                                                    | 104        |
| About Using Setting Lock .....                                                     | 105        |
| Network Security Features .....                                                    | 109        |
| Before Using Network Security Features .....                                       | 110        |
| Secure Function Lock 3.0 .....                                                     | 111        |
| Use Active Directory Authentication .....                                          | 117        |
| Use LDAP Authentication .....                                                      | 121        |
| Manage Your Network Machine Securely Using SSL/TLS .....                           | 125        |
| Manage Your Network Machine Securely Using IPsec .....                             | 157        |
| Send an Email Securely .....                                                       | 175        |
| Use IEEE 802.1x Authentication for a Wired or a Wireless Network .....             | 179        |
| Store Print Log to Network .....                                                   | 184        |
| <b>Mobile/Web Connect .....</b>                                                    | <b>189</b> |
| Print with Google Cloud Print™ .....                                               | 190        |
| Print with Mopria™ .....                                                           | 191        |
| Print from a Mobile Device .....                                                   | 192        |
| <b>Troubleshooting .....</b>                                                       | <b>193</b> |
| Error and Maintenance Messages .....                                               | 194        |
| Paper Jams .....                                                                   | 201        |
| Paper is Jammed in the MP tray .....                                               | 202        |
| Paper is Jammed in the Paper Tray .....                                            | 203        |
| Paper is Jammed in the Back of the Machine .....                                   | 205        |
| Paper is Jammed inside the Machine .....                                           | 207        |
| Paper is Jammed in the 2-sided Tray .....                                          | 209        |
| Printing Problems .....                                                            | 211        |
| Improve the Print Quality .....                                                    | 213        |
| Network Problems .....                                                             | 218        |
| Error Messages .....                                                               | 219        |
| Where Can I Find My Machine's Network Settings? .....                              | 222        |
| I Cannot Complete the Wireless Network Setup Configuration .....                   | 223        |
| My Machine Cannot Print over the Network .....                                     | 225        |
| I Want to Check that My Network Devices are Working Correctly .....                | 227        |
| Other Problems .....                                                               | 228        |
| Check the Machine Information .....                                                | 229        |
| Reset Functions .....                                                              | 231        |

|                                                          |            |
|----------------------------------------------------------|------------|
| Network Reset .....                                      | 232        |
| Factory Reset .....                                      | 233        |
| <b>Routine Maintenance .....</b>                         | <b>234</b> |
| Replace Supplies .....                                   | 235        |
| Replace the Toner Cartridge .....                        | 237        |
| Replace the Imaging Unit .....                           | 240        |
| Reset the Drum Counter .....                             | 242        |
| Clean the Machine .....                                  | 243        |
| Clean the Touchscreen LCD .....                          | 245        |
| Clean the Corona Wire .....                              | 246        |
| Clean the Imaging Unit .....                             | 247        |
| Clean the Paper Pick-up Rollers .....                    | 253        |
| Check the Remaining Life of Parts .....                  | 255        |
| Replace Periodic Maintenance Parts .....                 | 256        |
| <b>Machine Settings .....</b>                            | <b>257</b> |
| Change Machine Settings from the Control Panel .....     | 258        |
| General Settings .....                                   | 259        |
| Settings and Features Tables .....                       | 269        |
| Change Machine Settings from Your Computer .....         | 285        |
| Change Machine Settings Using Web Based Management ..... | 286        |
| <b>Appendix .....</b>                                    | <b>291</b> |
| Specifications .....                                     | 292        |
| How to Enter Text on Your Machine .....                  | 297        |
| <b>Glossary .....</b>                                    | <b>298</b> |

## Before You Use Your Machine

- [Applicable Models](#)
- [Definitions of Notes](#)
- [Trademarks](#)
- [Important Note](#)

## Applicable Models

This User's Guide applies to the following models:

1 line LCD models: bizhub 4000i

1.8 inch Touchscreen LCD models: bizhub 5000i



### Related Information

- [Before You Use Your Machine](#)
-

## Definitions of Notes

We use the following symbols and conventions throughout this User's Guide:

|                                                                                                  |                                                                                                                                                 |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  <b>WARNING</b> | Improper handling can cause serious injury or death.                                                                                            |
|  <b>CAUTION</b> | Improper handling can cause minor injury or damage to houses and property.                                                                      |
| <b>IMPORTANT</b>                                                                                 | IMPORTANT indicates a potentially hazardous situation which, if not avoided, may result in damage to property or loss of product functionality. |
| <b>NOTE</b>                                                                                      | NOTE specifies the operating environment, conditions for installation, or special conditions of use.                                            |
|                 | Tips icons indicate helpful hints and supplementary information.                                                                                |
|                 | Electrical Hazard icons alert you to possible electrical shock.                                                                                 |
|                 | Fire Hazard icons alert you to the possibility of a fire.                                                                                       |
|                 | Hot Surface icons warn you not to touch hot machine parts.                                                                                      |
|                 | Prohibition icons indicate actions you must not perform.                                                                                        |
| <b>Bold</b>                                                                                      | Bold style identifies buttons on the machine's control panel or computer screen.                                                                |
| <i>Italics</i>                                                                                   | Italicised style emphasises an important point or refers you to a related topic.                                                                |
| Courier New                                                                                      | Courier New font identifies messages shown on the machine's LCD.                                                                                |



### Related Information

- [Before You Use Your Machine](#)



## Trademarks

KONICA MINOLTA, the KONICA MINOLTA logo, Giving Shape to Ideas, PageScope, and bizhub are registered trademarks or trademarks of KONICA MINOLTA, INC.

Microsoft, Windows, Windows Server, Internet Explorer, Active Directory, OneNote, Windows phone and OneDrive are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and/or other countries.

Apple, Mac, Mac OS, Safari, iPad, iPhone, iPod touch and OS X are trademarks of Apple Inc., registered in the United States and other countries.

PostScript and PostScript 3 are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Adobe Systems Incorporated in the United States and/or other countries.

Wi-Fi CERTIFIED, Wi-Fi, Wi-Fi Alliance, Wi-Fi Direct and Wi-Fi Protected Access are registered trademarks of Wi-Fi Alliance®.

WPA, WPA2, Wi-Fi Protected Setup and Wi-Fi Protected Setup logo are trademarks of Wi-Fi Alliance®.

Android, Google Cloud Print, Google Drive, Google Chrome and Google Play are trademarks of Google, Inc. Use of these trademarks is subject to Google Permissions.

Mopria is a trademark of Mopria Alliance, Inc.

Mozilla and Firefox are registered trademarks of the Mozilla Foundation.

UNIX is a registered trademark of The Open Group in the United States and other countries.

Linux is the registered trademark of Linus Torvalds in the U.S. and other countries.

Intel is a trademark of Intel Corporation in the U.S. and/or other countries.

Each company whose software title is mentioned in this manual has a Software License Agreement specific to its proprietary programs.

**All other trademarks are the property of their respective owners.**



### Related Information

- [Before You Use Your Machine](#)

## Important Note

- Do not use this product outside the country of purchase as it may violate the wireless telecommunication and power regulations of that country.
- Windows 10 in this document represents Windows 10 Home, Windows 10 Pro, Windows 10 Education and Windows 10 Enterprise.
- Windows Server 2008 in this document represents Windows Server 2008 and Windows Server 2008 R2.
- Unless otherwise specified, the screens in this manual are from Windows 7 and macOS v10.12.x Screens on your computer may vary depending on your operating system.
- The contents of this guide and the specifications of this product are subject to change without notice.



### Related Information

- [Before You Use Your Machine](#)
-

## Introduction to Your Machine

- [Before Using Your Machine](#)
- [Front View and Back View](#)
- [Control Panel Overview](#)
- [Touchscreen LCD Overview](#)
- [How to Navigate the Touchscreen LCD](#)

## Before Using Your Machine

Before attempting any printing operation, confirm the following:

- Make sure you have installed the printer driver.
- For USB or network cable users: Make sure the interface cable is physically secure.

### Firewall (Windows)

If your computer is protected by a firewall and you are unable to network print, you may need to configure the firewall settings. If you are using any other personal firewall software, see the User's Guide for your software or contact the software manufacturer.



### Related Information

- [Introduction to Your Machine](#)
-

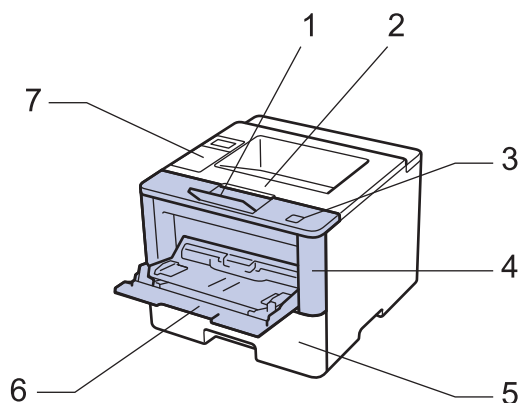
## Front View and Back View

>> bizhub 4000i

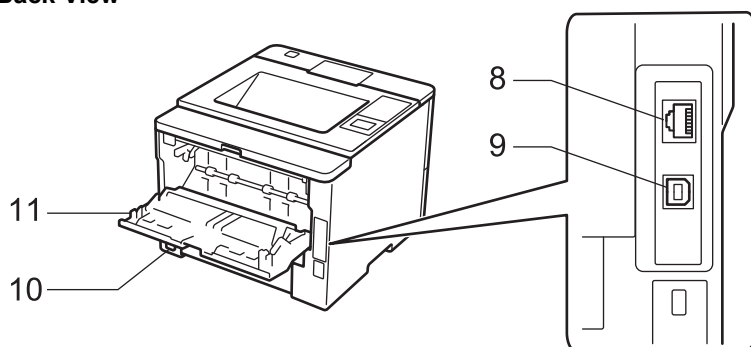
>> bizhub 5000i

### **bizhub 4000i**

#### Front View



#### Back View



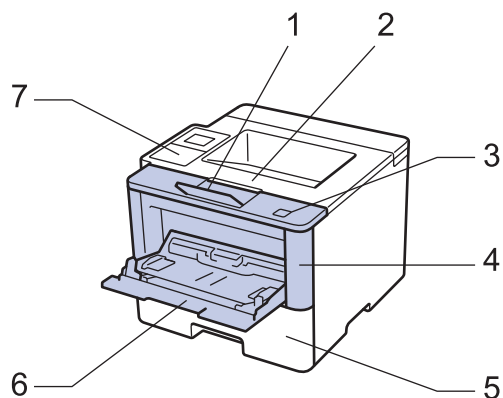
1. Face down output tray support flap (support flap)
2. Face down output tray
3. Front cover release button
4. Front cover
5. Paper tray
6. Multi-purpose tray (MP tray)
7. Control panel with a Liquid Crystal Display (LCD)
8. 10BASE-T / 100BASE-TX / 1000BASE-T port
9. USB port
10. AC power connector / cord
11. Back cover (Face up output tray)



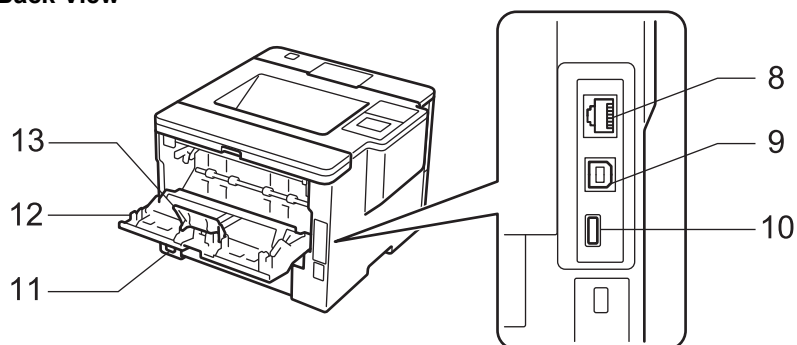
The machine is equipped with a non-detachable AC power cord depending on the model.

## bizhub 5000i

### Front View



### Back View



1. Face down output tray support flap (support flap)
2. Face down output tray
3. Front cover release button
4. Front cover
5. Paper tray
6. Multi-purpose tray (MP tray)
7. Touch panel with a tiltable touchscreen LCD
8. 10BASE-T / 100BASE-TX / 1000BASE-T port
9. USB port
10. This port cannot be used on this machine
11. AC power connector / cord
12. Back cover (Face up output tray)
13. Paper stopper



The machine is equipped with a non-detachable AC power cord depending on the model.



### Related Information

- [Introduction to Your Machine](#)

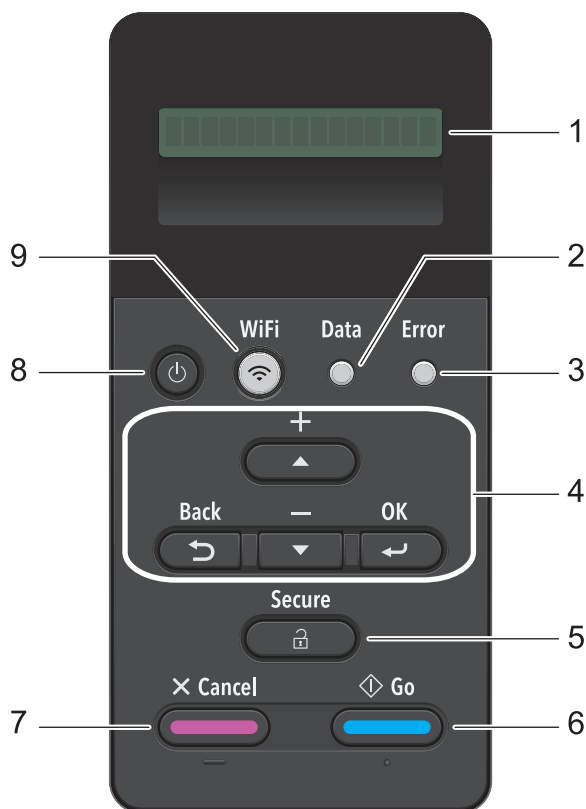
## Control Panel Overview

The control panel may vary depending on your model.

>> [bizhub 4000i](#)

>> [bizhub 5000i](#)

### bizhub 4000i



#### 1. Liquid Crystal Display (LCD)

Displays messages to help you set up and use the machine.

Wireless Network Models

A four-level indicator shows the wireless signal strength if you are using a wireless connection.



#### 2. Data LED

The **Data** LED blinks depending on the machine's status.

When the **Data** LED is on, data is in the machine's memory. When the **Data** LED blinks, the machine is receiving or processing data.

#### 3. Error LED

The **Error** LED blinks when the LCD displays an error or an important status message.

#### 4. Menu Buttons

##### OK

Press to store your machine's settings. After you change a setting, the machine returns to the previous menu level.

##### Back

- Press to go back one level in the menu.
- Press to select the previous digit when entering numbers.

### ▲ or ▼ (+ or -)

- Press to scroll through menus and options.
- Press to enter a number or to increase or decrease the number. Hold down ▲ or ▼ to scroll faster. When you see the number you want, press **OK**.

### 5. Secure

Press to print jobs saved in the memory when you enter your four-digit password.

### 6. Go

- Press to clear certain error messages. To clear all other errors, follow the LCD instructions.
- Press to print any data remaining in the machine's memory.
- Press to select the displayed option. After you change a setting, the machine returns to Ready Mode.

### 7. Cancel

- Press to cancel the current setting.
- Press to cancel a programmed print job and clear it from the machine's memory. To cancel multiple print jobs, hold down **Cancel** until the LCD displays [Cancel All Jobs].

### 8. Power On/Off

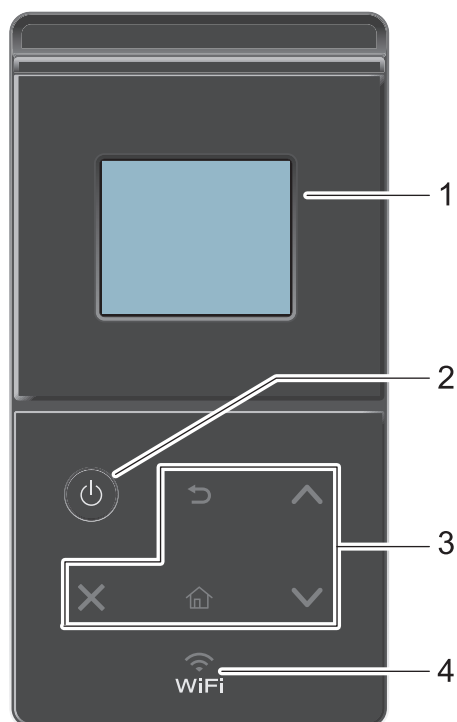
- Turn the machine on by pressing .
- Turn the machine off by pressing and holding down . The LCD displays [Shutting Down] for a few seconds before going off.

### 9. WiFi

Launch the wireless installer on your computer and press the **WiFi** button. Follow the on-screen instructions to set up a wireless connection between your machine and your network.

When the **WiFi** light is on, your machine is connected to a wireless access point. When the **WiFi** light blinks, the wireless connection is down, or your machine is in the process of connecting to a wireless access point.

## bizhub 5000i



### 1. Touchscreen Liquid Crystal Display (LCD)

Access menus and options by pressing them on the touchscreen.



---

## 2. Power On/Off

- Turn the machine on by pressing .
- Turn the machine off by pressing and holding down . The LCD displays [Shutting Down] for a few seconds before going off.

## 3. Touchpanel



(Back)

Press to go back to the previous menu.



(Home)

Press to return to the Home screen.



(Cancel)

- Press to cancel an operation (available when lit).
- Press to cancel a programmed print job and clear it from the machine's memory. To cancel multiple print jobs, hold down  until the LCD displays [Cancel All Jobs].



or

Press to display the previous or next page.

## 4. (WiFi)

(For infrastructure mode)

When the **WiFi** light is on, your machine is connected to a wireless access point. When the **WiFi** light blinks, the wireless connection is down, or your machine is in the process of connecting to a wireless access point.

(For Ad-Hoc mode)

The **WiFi** LED is always off.



## Related Information

- [Introduction to Your Machine](#)
-

## Touchscreen LCD Overview

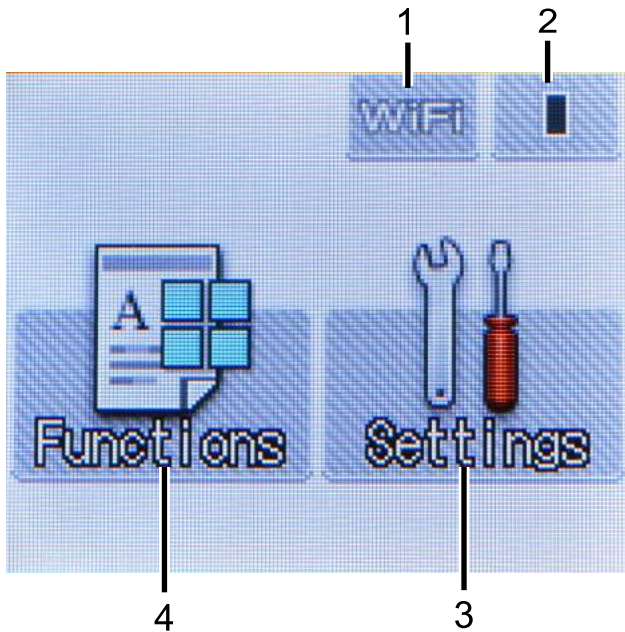
**Related Models:** bizhub 5000i

From the Home screen, you can access the Wi-Fi setup, Toner level, Settings, and Functions screen.

The Home screen displays the machine's status when the machine is idle. This screen is also called the Ready Mode screen. When displayed, this screen indicates that your machine is ready for the next command.

If Active Directory Authentication or LDAP Authentication is enabled, the machine's control panel will be locked.

The available features vary depending on your model.



1.  (Wireless Status )

If you are using a wireless connection, a four-level indicator in the Home screen displays the current wireless signal strength.



- If you see  at the top on the screen, press it to configure wireless settings.

2.  (Toner)

Displays the remaining toner life. Press to access the [Toner] menu.

3.  [Settings]

Press to access the [Settings] menu.

Use the Settings menu to access all of your machine's settings.

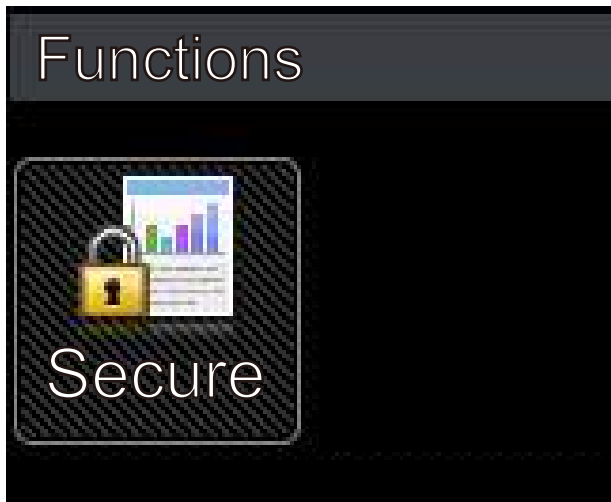
If Setting Lock has been turned on, a lock icon  appears on the LCD. You must unlock the machine to change settings.

4.  [Functions]

Press to access the Functions screen.

-  [Secure]

Press to access the Secure Print option.



#### Warning icon



The warning icon  appears when there is an error or maintenance message; press  to view it, and then press  to return to Ready Mode.



#### Related Information

- [Introduction to Your Machine](#)
-

## How to Navigate the Touchscreen LCD

**Related Models:** bizhub 5000i

Press your finger on the LCD to operate it. To display and access all the options, press ▲ or ▼ on the touchpanel to scroll through them.

The following steps explain how to navigate through changing the machine's setting. In this example, the LCD Backlight setting is changed from [Light] to [Med].

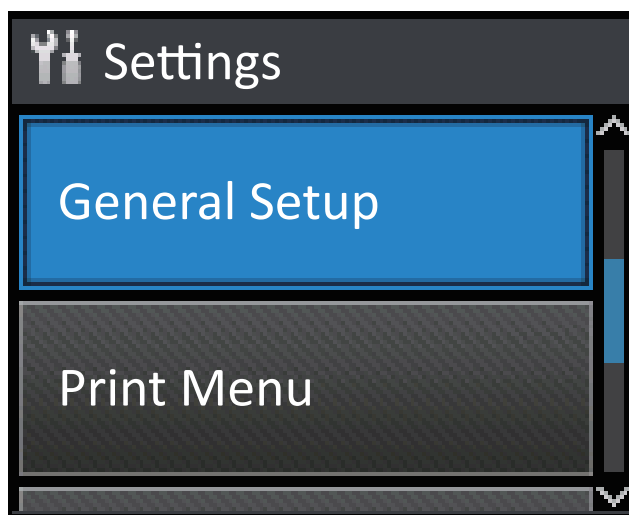
### IMPORTANT

DO NOT press the LCD with a sharp object such as a pen or stylus. It may damage the machine.

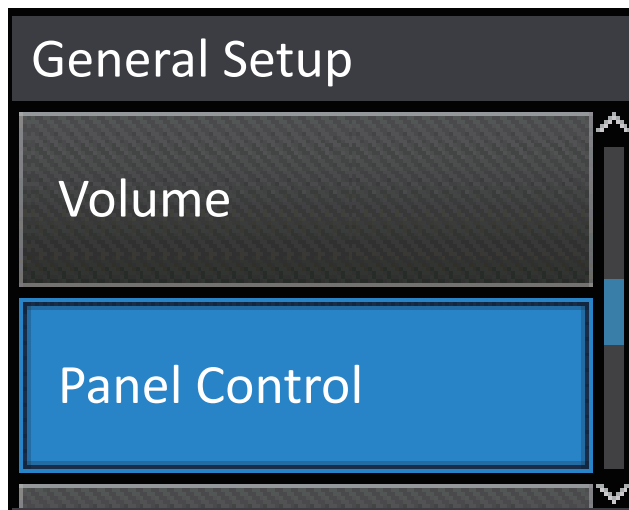
### NOTE

DO NOT touch the LCD immediately after plugging in the power cord or turning on the machine. Doing this may cause an error.

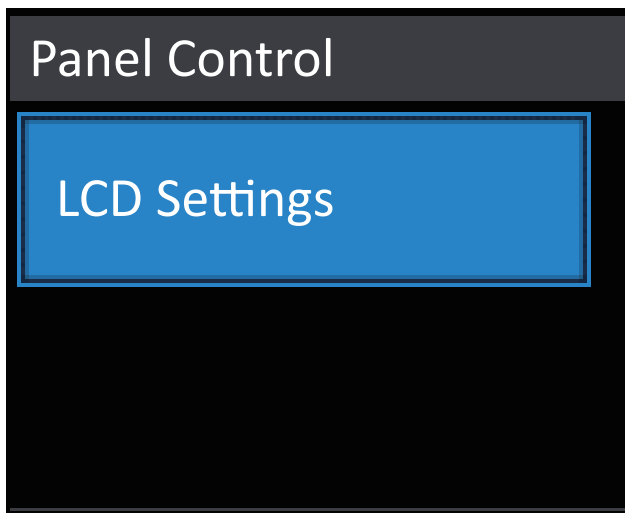
1. Press  [Settings].
2. Press ▲ or ▼ to display the [General Setup] option, and then press [General Setup].



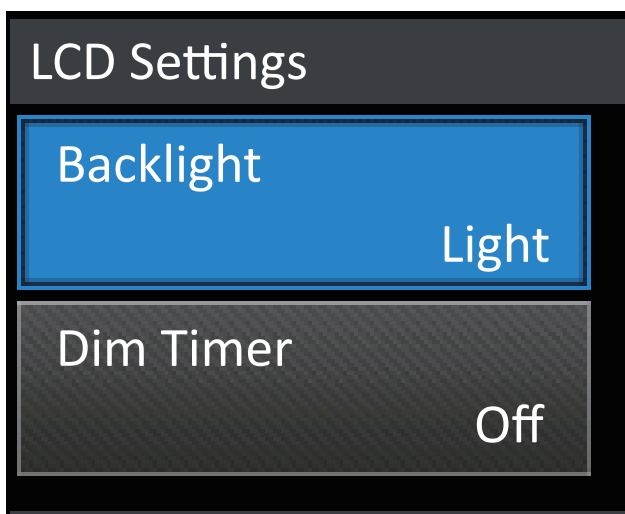
3. Press ▲ or ▼ to display the [Panel Control] option, and then press [Panel Control].



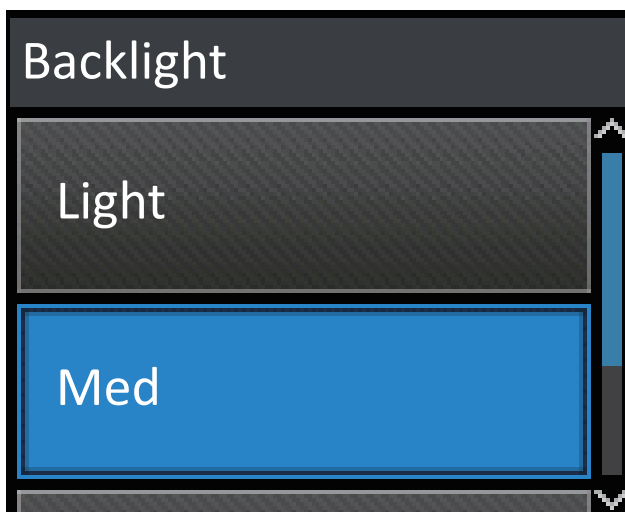
4. Press [LCD Settings].



5. Press [Backlight].



6. Press ▲ or ▼ to display the [Med] option, and then press [Med].



7. Press .



### Related Information

- [Introduction to Your Machine](#)

## Paper Handling

- [Load Paper](#)
- [Paper Settings](#)
- [Unprintable Area](#)
- [Using Special Paper](#)

## Load Paper

- [Load and Print Using the Paper Tray](#)
- [Load and Print Using the Multi-purpose Tray \(MP Tray\)](#)

## Load and Print Using the Paper Tray

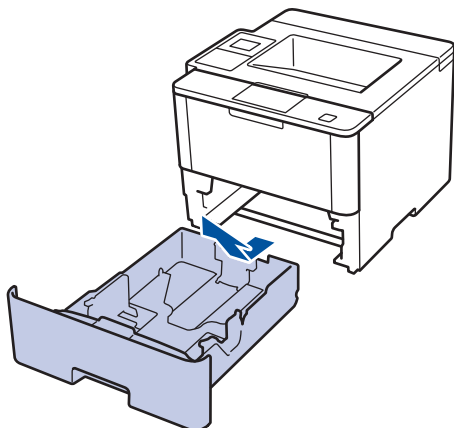
- [Load and Print Plain Paper, Letterhead, Coloured Paper, Thin Paper and Recycled Paper Using the Paper Tray](#)
- [Load and Print Thick Paper Using the Paper Tray](#)
- [Printing Problems](#)
- [Error and Maintenance Messages](#)



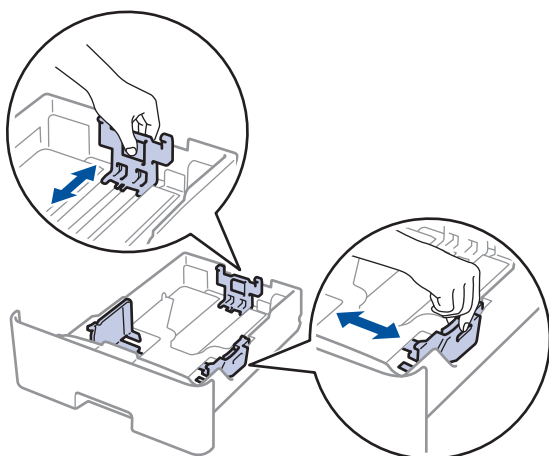
## Load and Print Plain Paper, Letterhead, Coloured Paper, Thin Paper and Recycled Paper Using the Paper Tray

- If the Check Size setting is set to On and you pull the paper tray out of the machine, a message appears on the LCD asking if you want to change the paper size and paper type. Change the paper size and paper type settings if needed, following the LCD instructions.
- When you load a different size and type of paper in the tray, you must change the Paper Size and Paper Type settings in the machine or on your computer, also.

1. Pull the paper tray completely out of the machine.



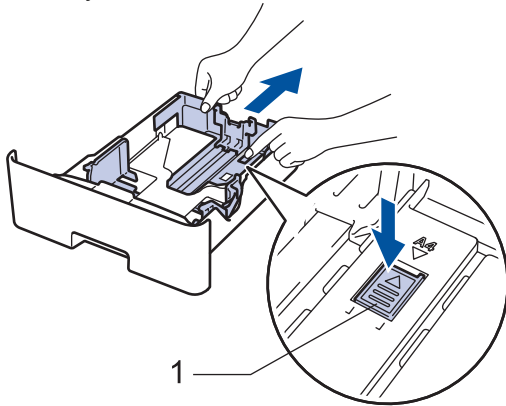
2. Press and slide the paper guides to fit the paper.  
Press the release levers to slide the paper guides.



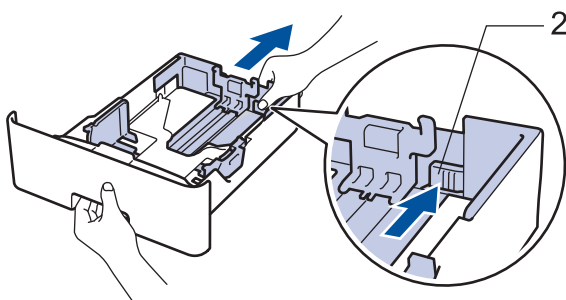


For Legal or Folio size paper, press the release button (1) in the bottom of the paper tray or the release lever (2) in the back of the tray, and then pull out the back of the paper tray. (Legal and Folio size paper are not available in some regions.)

For trays with a release button:



For trays with a release lever:

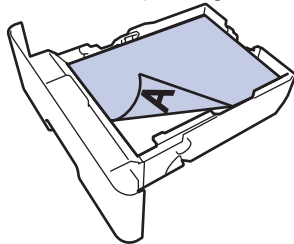


3. Fan the stack of paper well.
4. Load paper in the paper tray with the printing surface *face down*.

When you use Letterhead or Preprinted paper, load the paper in the correct orientation as shown in the illustrations.

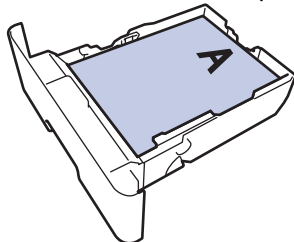
## Paper Orientation for Letterhead and Preprinted Paper

For 1-sided printing



- face down
- top edge toward the front of the paper tray

For automatic 2-sided printing (long edge binding)



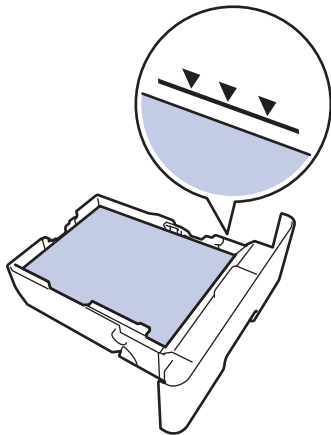
- face up
- bottom edge toward the front of the paper tray



- DO NOT load different sizes and types of paper in the paper tray at the same time. Doing this may cause the paper to jam or misfeed.
- When you use Letterhead or Preprinted paper for 2-sided printing, change the machine's setting by completing the following step:
  - (bizhub 4000i)  
Press [Paper Tray] > [2-sided] > [Single Image] > [2-sided Feed].
  - (bizhub 5000i)  
Press [Settings] > [Paper Tray] > [2-sided] > [Single Image] > [2-sided Feed].

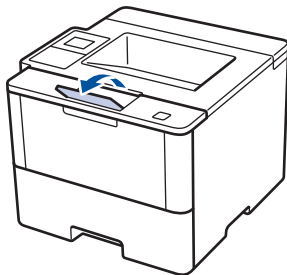
5. Make sure the paper is below the maximum paper mark (▼▼▼).

Overfilling the paper tray will cause paper jams.



6. Slowly push the paper tray completely into the machine.

7. Lift the support flap to prevent paper from sliding off the output tray.



8. Send your print job to the machine.



Change your print preferences in the Print dialog box before sending the print job from your computer.



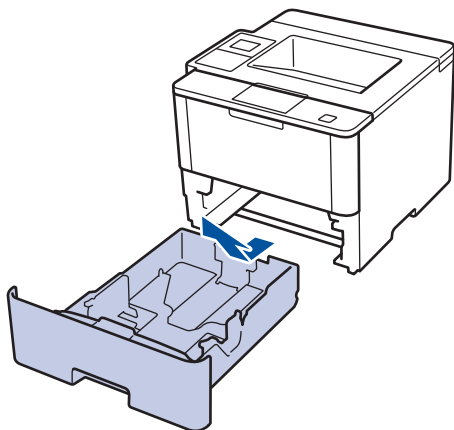
## Related Information

- [Load and Print Using the Paper Tray](#)

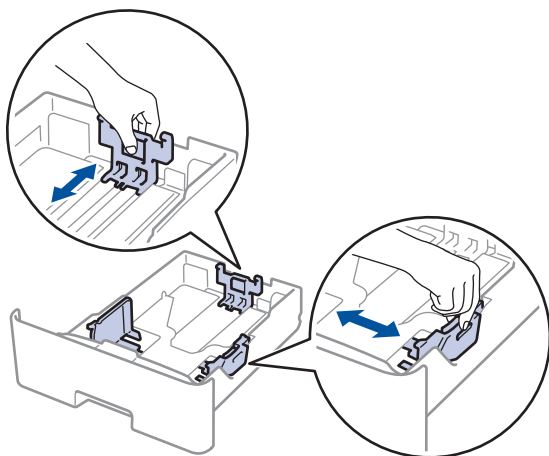
## Load and Print Thick Paper Using the Paper Tray

- If the Check Size setting is set to On and you pull the paper tray out of the machine, a message appears on the LCD asking if you want to change the paper size and paper type. Change the paper size and paper type settings if needed, following the LCD instructions.
- When you load a different size and type of paper in the tray, you must change the Paper Size and Paper Type settings in the machine or on your computer, also.

1. Pull the paper tray completely out of the machine.



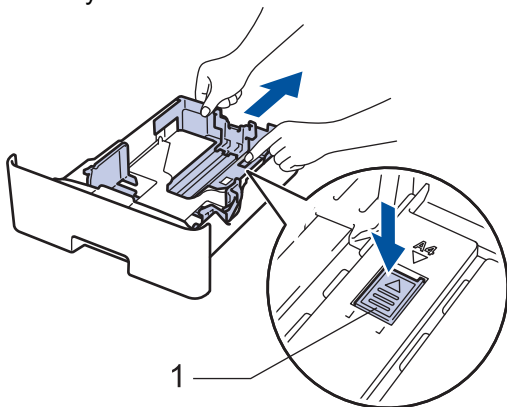
2. Press and slide the paper guides to fit the paper.  
Press the release levers to slide the paper guides.



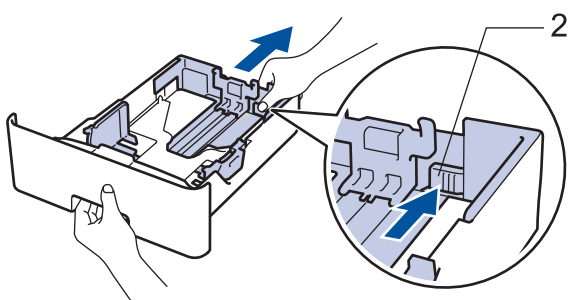


For Legal or Folio size paper, press the release button (1) in the bottom of the paper tray or the release lever (2) in the back of the tray, and then pull out the back of the paper tray. (Legal and Folio size paper are not available in some regions.)

For trays with a release button:



For trays with a release lever:

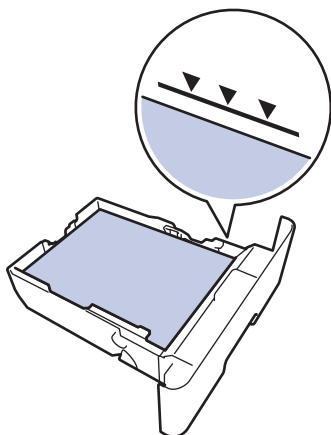


3. Fan the stack of paper well.
4. Load paper in the paper tray with the printing surface *face down*.

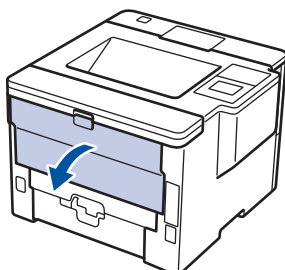


DO NOT load different sizes and types of paper in the paper tray at the same time. Doing this may cause the paper to jam or misfeed.

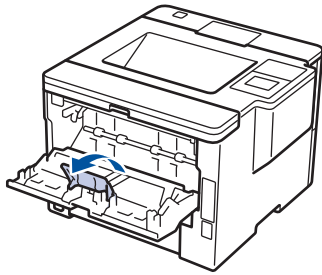
5. Make sure the paper is below the maximum paper mark (▼▼▼).  
Overfilling the paper tray will cause paper jams.



6. Slowly push the paper tray completely into the machine.
7. Open the machine's back cover (the face up output tray).



- 
8. Open the paper stopper (Available only for bizhub 5000i).



9. Send your print job to the machine.



---

Change your print preferences in the Print dialog box before sending the print job from your computer.

---

10. Close the paper stopper.
11. Close the back cover (the face up output tray) until it locks in the closed position.



### **Related Information**

- [Load and Print Using the Paper Tray](#)
-

## **Load and Print Using the Multi-purpose Tray (MP Tray)**

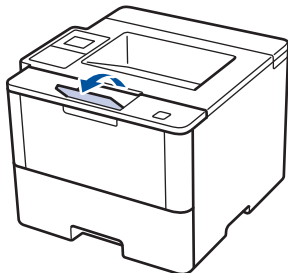
You can load up to ten envelopes, letterhead, coloured paper, thin or thick paper, recycled paper, Bond paper, labels, or up to 50 sheets of plain paper in the MP tray.

- [Load and Print Plain Paper, Letterhead, Coloured Paper, Thin Paper, Recycled Paper and Bond Paper in the MP Tray](#)
- [Load and Print Thick Paper and Labels Using the MP Tray](#)
- [Load and Print on Envelopes Using the MP Tray](#)
- [Printing Problems](#)
- [Error and Maintenance Messages](#)

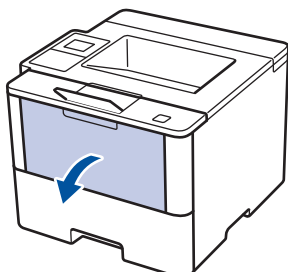
## Load and Print Plain Paper, Letterhead, Coloured Paper, Thin Paper, Recycled Paper and Bond Paper in the MP Tray

When you load a different size and type of paper in the tray, you must change the Paper Size and Paper Type settings in the machine or on your computer, also.

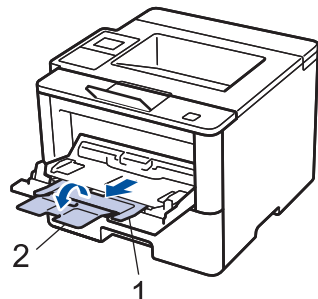
1. Lift the support flap to prevent paper from sliding off the face down output tray.



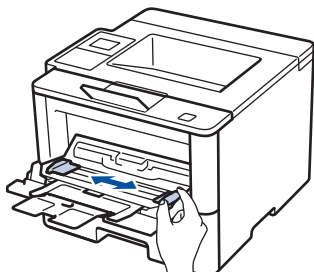
2. Open the MP tray and lower it gently.



3. Pull out the MP tray support (1) and unfold the flap (2).

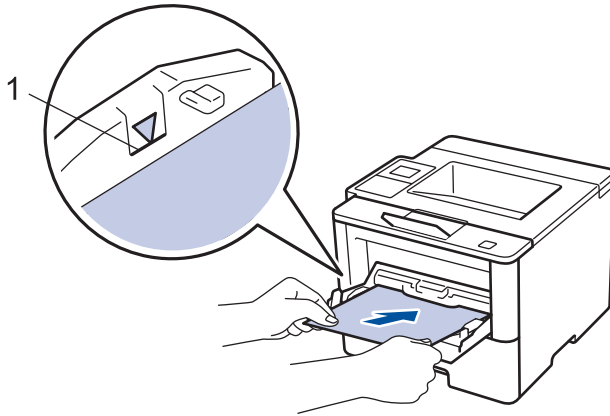


4. Slide the MP tray paper guides to fit the width of the paper you are using. If the paper guide on the right side has a lever, press it and slide the paper guide.



5. Load paper with the printing surface *face up* in the MP tray. When you use Letterhead or Preprinted paper, load the paper in the correct orientation as shown in the illustrations.

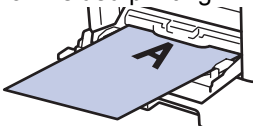




 Make sure the paper is below the maximum paper mark (1).

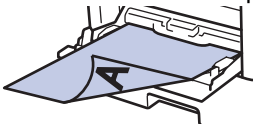
## Paper Orientation for Letterhead and Preprinted Paper

For 1-sided printing



- face up
- top edge first

For automatic 2-sided printing (long edge binding)



- face down
- bottom edge first

 When you use Letterhead or Preprinted paper for 2-sided printing, change the machine's setting by completing the following step:

- (bizhub 4000i)  
Press [Paper Tray] > [2-sided] > [Single Image] > [2-sided Feed].
- (bizhub 5000i)  
Press [Settings] > [Paper Tray] > [2-sided] > [Single Image] > [2-sided Feed].

6. Send your print job to the machine.

 Change your print preferences in the Print dialog box before sending the print job from your computer.



## Related Information

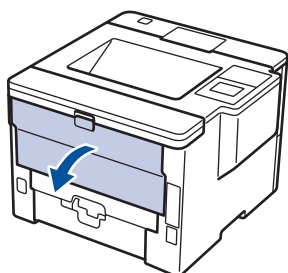
- [Load and Print Using the Multi-purpose Tray \(MP Tray\)](#)

## Load and Print Thick Paper and Labels Using the MP Tray

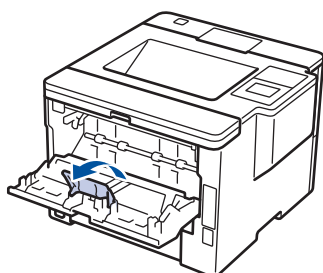
When the back cover (face up output tray) is pulled down, the machine has a straight paper path from the MP tray through to the back of the machine. Use this paper feed and output method when you print on thick paper or labels.

When you load a different size and type of paper in the tray, you must change the Paper Size and Paper Type settings in the machine or on your computer, also.

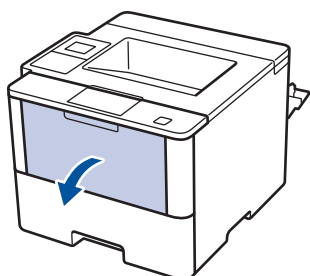
1. Open the machine's back cover (the face up output tray).



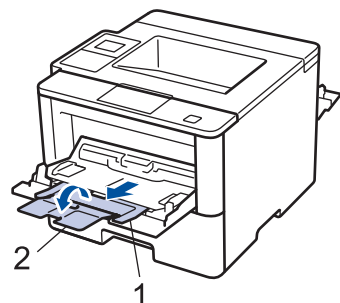
2. Open the paper stopper (Available only for bizhub 5000i).



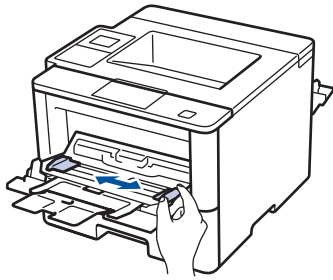
3. On the front of the machine, open the MP tray and lower it gently.



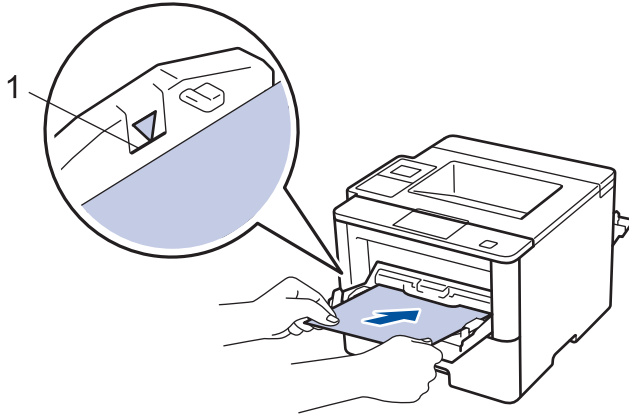
4. Pull out the MP tray support (1) and unfold the flap (2).



5. Slide the MP tray paper guides to fit the width of the paper that you are using. If the paper guide on the right side has a lever, press it and slide the paper guide.



6. Load paper or labels in the MP tray.



- Make sure the paper is below the maximum paper mark (1).
- Load paper into the MP tray with the printing surface face up.

7. Send your print job to the machine.



Change your print preferences in the Print screen before sending the print job from your computer.

8. Close the paper stopper.

9. Close the back cover (the face up output tray) until it locks in the closed position.



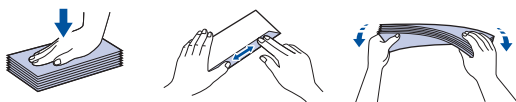
### Related Information

- [Load and Print Using the Multi-purpose Tray \(MP Tray\)](#)

## Load and Print on Envelopes Using the MP Tray

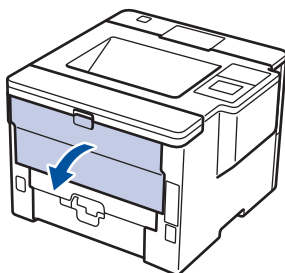
You can load up to ten envelopes in the MP tray.

Before loading, press the corners and sides of the envelopes to make them as flat as possible.

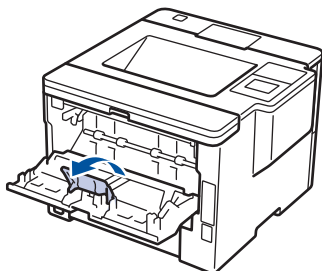


When you load a different size and type of paper in the tray, you must change the Paper Size and Paper Type settings in the machine or on your computer, also.

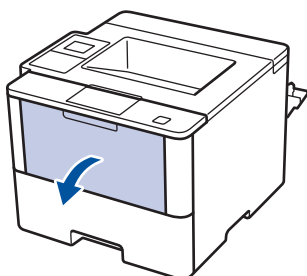
1. Open the machine's back cover (the face up output tray).



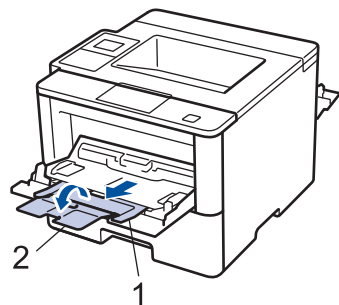
2. Open the paper stopper (Available only for bizhub 5000i).



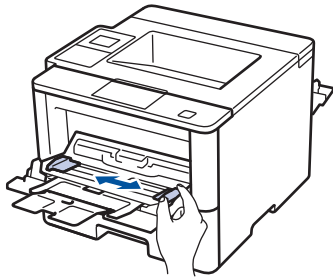
3. On the front of the machine, open the MP tray and lower it gently.



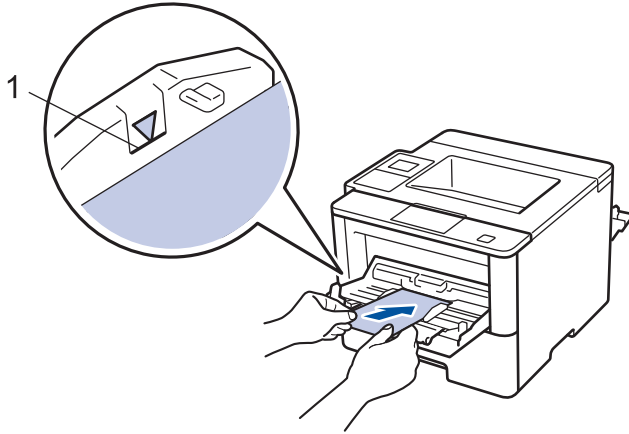
4. Pull out the MP tray support (1) and unfold the flap (2).



5. Slide the MP tray paper guides to fit the width of the envelopes that you are using. If the paper guide on the right side has a lever, press it and slide the paper guide.



6. Load envelopes in the MP tray.



Load up to 10 envelopes in the MP tray with the printing surface face up. Make sure the envelopes are below the maximum paper mark (1). Loading more than 10 envelopes may cause paper jams.

7. Send your print job to the machine.



Change your print preferences in the Print dialog box before sending the print job from your computer.

| Settings   | Options for Envelopes                |
|------------|--------------------------------------|
| Paper Size | Com-10<br>DL<br>C5<br>Monarch        |
| Paper Type | Envelopes<br>Env. Thick<br>Env. Thin |

8. Close the paper stopper.

9. Close the back cover (the face up output tray) until it locks in the closed position.



## Related Information

- [Load and Print Using the Multi-purpose Tray \(MP Tray\)](#)

## **Paper Settings**

- [Change the Paper Size and Paper Type](#)
- [Change the Check Paper Size Setting](#)

## Change the Paper Size and Paper Type

When you change the size and type of the paper you load in the tray, you must change the Paper Size and Paper Type settings on the LCD at the same time.

>> [bizhub 4000i](#)

>> [bizhub 5000i](#)

### bizhub 4000i

1. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the [Paper Tray] option, and then press **OK**.
2. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the [Paper Type] option, and then press **OK**.
3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the paper tray that you want to change, and then press **OK**.
4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the paper type you want, and then press **OK**.
5. Press **Back**.
6. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the [Paper Size] option, and then press **OK**.
7. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the paper tray that you want to change, and then press **OK**.
8. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the paper size you want, and then press **Go**.

### bizhub 5000i

1. Press  [Settings] > [Paper Tray] > [Paper Type].
2. Press ▲ or ▼ to display the paper tray options, and then press the option you want.
3. Press ▲ or ▼ to display the paper type options, and then press the option you want.
4. Press .
5. Press ▲ or ▼ to display the [Paper Size] option.
6. Press ▲ or ▼ to display the paper tray options, and then press the option you want.
7. Press ▲ or ▼ to display the paper size options, and then press the option you want.
8. Press .

### Related Information

- [Paper Settings](#)

## Change the Check Paper Size Setting

When you turn on your machine's Check Size setting, the machine displays a message when you remove a paper tray or load paper using the MP tray, asking if you changed the paper size and paper type.

The default setting is On.

>> [bizhub 4000i](#)

>> [bizhub 5000i](#)

### **bizhub 4000i**

1. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the [Paper Tray] option, and then press **OK**.
2. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the [Check Size] option, and then press **OK**.
3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the [On] or [Off] option, and then press **Go**.

### **bizhub 5000i**

1. Press  [Settings] > [Paper Tray] > [Check Size].
2. Press [On] or [Off].
3. Press .



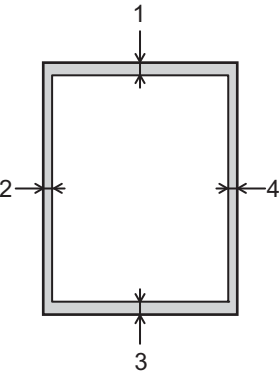
### **Related Information**

- [Paper Settings](#)



## Unprintable Area

The figures below show maximum unprintable areas from the edges of the most commonly-used paper sizes. The measurements may vary depending on the paper size or settings in the application you are using.



Do not attempt to print into these areas; your output will not reflect anything in these areas.

| Usage | Document Size | Top (1)<br>Bottom (3) | Left (2)<br>Right (4) |
|-------|---------------|-----------------------|-----------------------|
| Print | Letter        | 4.23 mm               | 4.23 mm               |
|       | A4            | 4.23 mm               | 4.23 mm               |



### Related Information

- [Paper Handling](#)

## Using Special Paper

Always test paper samples before purchasing them to ensure desirable performance.

- DO NOT use inkjet paper; it may cause a paper jam or damage your machine.
- If you use bond paper, paper with a rough surface, or paper that is wrinkled or creased, the paper may exhibit degraded performance.

Store paper in its original packaging and keep it sealed. Keep the paper flat and away from moisture, direct sunlight and heat.

### IMPORTANT

Some types of paper may not perform well or may cause damage to your machine.

DO NOT use paper:

- that is highly textured
- that is extremely smooth or shiny
- that is curled or warped
- that is coated or has a chemical finish
- that is damaged, creased or folded
- that exceeds the recommended weight specification in this guide
- with tabs and staples
- with letterheads using low temperature dyes or thermography
- that is multipart or carbonless
- that is designed for inkjet printing

If you use any of the types of paper listed above, they may damage your machine. This damage is not covered under any warranty or service agreement.



### Related Information

- [Paper Handling](#)

## Print

- [Print from Your Computer \(Windows\)](#)
- [Print from Your Computer \(Mac\)](#)
- [Cancel a Print Job](#)
- [Test Print](#)

## **Print from Your Computer (Windows)**

- [Print a Document \(Windows\)](#)
- [Secure Print \(Windows\)](#)
- [Change the Default Print Settings \(Windows\)](#)

## Print a Document (Windows)

For labels, thick paper, and envelopes, set the paper size and paper type in the printer before printing the document.

1. From the document that you are trying to print, open the Print dialog.
2. If necessary, adjust the settings.
3. Print the document.

For details of the function of the printer driver, refer to the Help of the printer driver.



### Related Information

- [Print from Your Computer \(Windows\)](#)
-

## Secure Print (Windows)

Use Secure Print to ensure that confidential or sensitive documents do not print until you enter a password on the machine's control panel.

- The secure data is deleted from the machine when you turn off the machine.

>> bizhub 4000i

>> bizhub 5000i

### bizhub 4000i

1. Select the print command in your application.
2. Select **KONICA MINOLTA XXXX** (where XXXX is the name of your model), and then click the printing properties or preferences button.  
The printer driver window appears.
3. Click the **Basic** tab.
4. Select **Confidential print** from the **Job Retention** drop-down list.
5. Type your four-digit password in the **Password** field, and then click **OK**.



You must set a separate password for each document.

6. Click **OK**.
7. Complete your print operation.
8. On the machine's control panel, press **Secure**.
9. Press ▲ or ▼ to display your user name, and then press **OK**.  
The LCD displays the list of secured jobs for that name.
10. Press ▲ or ▼ to display the job, and then press **OK**.
11. Enter your four-digit password.  
To enter each digit, press ▲ or ▼ to select a number, and then press **OK**.
12. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the [Print] option, and then press **OK**.
13. Press ▲ or ▼ to enter the number of copies you want.
14. Press **OK**.

The machine prints the data.

After you print the secured data, it will be cleared from the machine's memory.

### bizhub 5000i

1. Select the print command in your application.
2. Select **KONICA MINOLTA XXXX** (where XXXX is the name of your model), and then click the printing properties or preferences button.  
The printer driver window appears.
3. Click the **Basic** tab.
4. Select **Confidential print** from the **Job Retention** drop-down list.
5. Type your four-digit password in the **Password** field, and then click **OK**.



You must set a separate password for each document.

6. Click **OK**.
7. Complete your print operation.

- 
8. On the machine's control panel, press  [Functions].
  9. Press [Secure].
  10. Press ▲ or ▼ to display user names, and then press your user name.  
The LCD displays the list of secured jobs for that name.
  11. Press ▲ or ▼ to display the print job you want to print, and then press it.
  12. Enter your four-digit password, and then press [OK].
  13. Enter the number of copies you want.
  14. Press [Start].  
The machine prints the data.

After you print the secured data, it will be cleared from the machine's memory.



### Related Information

- [Print from Your Computer \(Windows\)](#)
-

## Change the Default Print Settings (Windows)

When you change print settings from within a program, the changes apply only to the items you are printing in that program, at that time. To select print settings to use for all of your Windows programs, all the time, use these steps to change the default print settings.

1. Do one of the following:

- (For Windows Server 2008)

Click  (**Start**) > **Control Panel** > **Hardware and Sound** > **Printers**.

- (For Windows 7 and Windows Server 2008 R2)

Click  (**Start**) > **Devices and Printers**.

- (For Windows 8.1)

Move your mouse to the lower right corner of your desktop. When the menu bar appears, click **Settings**, and then click **Control Panel**. In the **Hardware and Sound** group, click **View devices and printers**.

- (For Windows 10 and Windows Server 2016)

Click  > **Windows System** > **Control Panel**. In the **Hardware and Sound** group, click **View devices and printers**.

- (For Windows Server 2012)

Move your mouse to the lower right corner of your desktop. When the menu bar appears, click **Settings**, and then click **Control Panel**. In the **Hardware** group, click **View devices and printers**.

- (For Windows Server 2012 R2 and Windows Server 2019)

Click **Control Panel** on the **Start** screen. In the **Hardware** group, click **View devices and printers**.

2. Right-click the **KONICA MINOLTA XXXX** icon (where XXXX is your model name), and then select **Printer properties**. If printer driver options appear, select your printer driver.

3. Click the **General** tab, and then click the **Printing Preferences...** or **Preferences...** button.

The printer driver dialog box appears.



- To configure the tray settings, click the **Configure** tab.
- To change the printer port, click the **Ports** tab.

4. Select the print settings you want to use as defaults for all of your Windows programs.

5. Click **OK**.

6. Close the printer properties dialog box.



### Related Information

- [Print from Your Computer \(Windows\)](#)
  - [Configure the Optional Tray Settings \(Windows\)](#)



## Configure the Optional Tray Settings (Windows)

Access your machine's Properties to auto-detect your machine's Optional Tray and serial number.

The printer driver automatically detects the Optional Tray during the driver installation. If you added the Optional Tray after the driver installation, follow these steps.

1. Do one of the following:
  - (For Windows Server 2008)  
Click  (**Start**) > **Control Panel** > **Hardware and Sound** > **Printers**.
  - (For Windows 7 and Windows Server 2008 R2)  
Click  (**Start**) > **Devices and Printers**.
  - (For Windows 8.1)  
Move your mouse to the lower right corner of your desktop. When the menu bar appears, click **Settings**, and then click **Control Panel**. In the **Hardware and Sound** group, click **View devices and printers**.
  - (For Windows 10 and Windows Server 2016)  
Click  > **Windows System** > **Control Panel**. In the **Hardware and Sound** group, click **View devices and printers**.
  - (For Windows Server 2012)  
Move your mouse to the lower right corner of your desktop. When the menu bar appears, click **Settings**, and then click **Control Panel**. In the **Hardware** group, click **View devices and printers**.
  - (For Windows Server 2012 R2 and Windows Server 2019)  
Click **Control Panel** on the **Start** screen. In the **Hardware** group, click **View devices and printers**.
2. Right-click the **KONICA MINOLTA XXXX** icon (where XXXX is your model name), and then select **Printer properties**. If printer driver options appear, select your printer driver.
3. Select the **Configure** tab.
4. Click the **Acquire Device Information** button.  
The Optional Tray and the machine's serial number are automatically detected.
5. Click the **Apply** button.

The **Acquire Device Information** function is not available under the following machine conditions:

- The machine power switch is off.
- The machine is in an error state.
- The machine is in a network shared environment.
- The cable is not connected to the machine correctly.



### Related Information

- [Change the Default Print Settings \(Windows\)](#)

## **Print from Your Computer (Mac)**

- [Print a Document \(Mac\)](#)
- [Secure Print \(Mac\)](#)
- [Configure the Optional Tray Settings \(Mac\)](#)

## Print a Document (Mac)

1. Make sure you have loaded the correct size paper in the paper tray.
2. From an application, such as Apple TextEdit, click the **File** menu, and then select **Print**.
3. Select **KONICA MINOLTA XXXX** (where XXXX is your model name).
4. Type the number of copies you want in the **Copies** field.
5. Click the **Paper Size** pop-up menu, and then select your paper size.
6. Select the **Orientation** option that matches the way you want the document to print.
7. Click the application pop-up menu, and then select **Print Settings**.

The **Print Settings** options appear.

8. Click the **Media Type** pop-up menu, and then select the type of paper you are using.
9. Change other printer settings, if needed.
10. Click **Print**.



### Related Information

- [Print from Your Computer \(Mac\)](#)
-

## Secure Print (Mac)

Use Secure Print to ensure that confidential or sensitive documents do not print until you enter a password on the machine's control panel.

- The secure data is deleted from the machine when you turn off the machine.

>> bizhub 4000i

>> bizhub 5000i

### bizhub 4000i

1. From an application, such as Apple TextEdit, click the **File** menu, and then select **Print**.
2. Select **KONICA MINOLTA XXXX** (where XXXX is your model name).
3. Click the **Show Details** button.
4. Select **Printer Features** in the print dialog box.
5. Select **Secure Print** from the **Feature Sets** drop-down list.
6. Select the **Secure Print** check box.
7. Set a four-digit password. Set each digit in the fields for the first, second, third, and fourth digits starting from the top.
8. Click **Print**.
9. On the machine's control panel, press **Secure**.
10. Press ▲ or ▼ to display your user name, and then press **OK**.  
The LCD displays the list of secured jobs for that name.
11. Press ▲ or ▼ to display the job, and then press **OK**.
12. Enter your four-digit password.  
To enter each digit, press ▲ or ▼ to select a number, and then press **OK**.
13. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the [Print] option, and then press **OK**.
14. Press ▲ or ▼ to enter the number of copies you want.
15. Press **OK**.  
The machine prints the data.

After you print the secured data, it will be cleared from the machine's memory.

### bizhub 5000i

1. From an application, such as Apple TextEdit, click the **File** menu, and then select **Print**.
2. Select **KONICA MINOLTA XXXX** (where XXXX is your model name).
3. Click the **Show Details** button.
4. Select **Printer Features** in the print dialog box.
5. Select **Secure Print** from the **Feature Sets** drop-down list.
6. Select the **Secure Print** check box.
7. Set a four-digit password. Set each digit in the fields for the first, second, third, and fourth digits starting from the top.
8. Click **Print**.
9. On the machine's control panel, press  [Functions].
10. Press [Secure].
11. Press ▲ or ▼ to display user names, and then press your user name.  
The LCD displays the list of secured jobs for that name.

- 
12. Press ▲ or ▼ to display the print job you want to print, and then press it.
  13. Enter your four-digit password, and then press [OK].
  14. Enter the number of copies you want.
  15. Press [Start].

The machine prints the data.

After you print the secured data, it will be cleared from the machine's memory.



### **Related Information**

- [Print from Your Computer \(Mac\)](#)
-

## Configure the Optional Tray Settings (Mac)

1. From System Preferences in the Apple menu, navigate to your printer, and then select **Options & Supplies**.
2. Navigate to the list of hardware options, and then add any installed options.
3. Apply the changes.



### Related Information

- [Print from Your Computer \(Mac\)](#)
-

## Cancel a Print Job

>> [bizhub 4000i](#)  
>> [bizhub 5000i](#)

### bizhub 4000i

1. Press **Cancel**.



To cancel multiple print jobs, press and hold **Cancel** for four seconds.

### bizhub 5000i

1. Press .



To cancel multiple print jobs, press and hold  for four seconds.



### Related Information

- [Print](#)

#### Related Topics:

- [Printing Problems](#)

## Test Print

If there are problems with print quality, follow these instructions to do a test print.

>> [bizhub 4000i](#)

>> [bizhub 5000i](#)

### **bizhub 4000i**

1. Press ▲ or ▼ to display the [Machine Info.] option, and then press **OK**.
2. Press ▲ or ▼ to display the [Test Print] option, and then press **OK**.

The machine prints the test page.

### **bizhub 5000i**

1. Press  [Settings] > [Machine Information] > [Test Print].
2. Press [OK].
3. Press .

### **Related Information**

- [Print](#)

#### **Related Topics:**

- [Improve the Print Quality](#)



## Network

- [Get Started](#)
- [Network Management Software and Utilities](#)
- [Additional Methods of Configuring Your Machine for a Wireless Network](#)
- [Advanced Network Features](#)
- [Technical Information for Advanced Users](#)

## Get Started

We recommend setting up and connecting to your network using the Utilities CD. This section provides more information about network connection types, introduces various methods to manage your network and explains some useful network features of your machine.

- [Supported Basic Network Features](#)

## Supported Basic Network Features

The print server supports various features depending on the operating system. Use this table to see which network features and connections are supported by each operating system.

| Operating Systems    | Windows 7<br>Windows 8.1<br>Windows 10 | Windows Server<br>2008/2012/<br>2012 R2/2016/2019 | OS X v10.10.x<br>OS X v10.11.x<br>macOS v10.12.x<br>macOS v10.13.x<br>macOS v10.14.x |
|----------------------|----------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Printing             | Yes                                    | Yes                                               | Yes                                                                                  |
| Web Based Management | Yes                                    | Yes                                               | Yes                                                                                  |



### Related Information

- [Get Started](#)

## Network Management Software and Utilities

Configure and change your machine's network settings using a management utility.

- [Learn about Network Management Software and Utilities](#)
- [Change Machine Settings from Your Computer](#)
- [Change Machine Settings Using Web Based Management](#)

## Learn about Network Management Software and Utilities

### Web Based Management

Web Based Management is a utility that uses a standard web browser to manage your machine using the Hyper Text Transfer Protocol (HTTP) or Hyper Text Transfer Protocol over Secure Socket Layer (HTTPS). Type your machine's IP address into your web browser to access and change your print server settings.



### Related Information

- [Network Management Software and Utilities](#)
-

## Additional Methods of Configuring Your Machine for a Wireless Network

To connect your machine to your wireless network, we recommend using the Utilities CD.

- [Before Configuring Your Machine for a Wireless Network](#)
- [Configure Your Machine for a Wireless Network](#)
- [Configure Your Machine for a Wireless Network Using the One Push Method of Wi-Fi Protected Setup™ \(WPS\)](#)
- [Configure Your Machine for a Wireless Network Using the PIN Method of Wi-Fi Protected Setup™ \(WPS\)](#)
- [Configure Your Machine for a Wireless Network in Ad-Hoc Mode \(For IEEE 802.11b/g/n\)](#)
- [Configure Your Machine for a Wireless Network Using the Machine's Control Panel Setup Wizard](#)
- [Configure Your Machine for a Wireless Network When the SSID Is Not Broadcast](#)
- [Configure Your Machine for an Enterprise Wireless Network](#)
- [Use Wi-Fi Direct®](#)

## Before Configuring Your Machine for a Wireless Network

Before attempting to configure a wireless network, confirm the following:

- Before configuring wireless settings, you must know your Network name (SSID) and Network Key. If you are using an enterprise wireless network, you must know the User ID and Password.



If you do not know the security information, please consult the router manufacture, your system administrator, or your Internet provider.

- To achieve optimum results with normal everyday document printing, place this machine as close to the wireless LAN access point/router as possible with minimal obstructions. Large objects and walls between the two devices and interference from other electronic devices can affect the data transfer speed of your documents.

Due to these factors, wireless may not be the best method of connection for all types of documents and applications. If you are printing large files, such as multi-page documents with mixed text and large graphics, you may want to consider selecting wired Ethernet for faster data transfer, or USB for the fastest throughput speed.

- Although this machine can be used in both a wired and wireless network, only one connection method can be used at a time. However, a wireless network connection and Wi-Fi Direct connection, or a wired network connection and Wi-Fi Direct connection can be used at the same time.



### Related Information

- [Additional Methods of Configuring Your Machine for a Wireless Network](#)

## Configure Your Machine for a Wireless Network

1. Turn on your computer and put the Utilities CD into your CD-ROM drive.
2. The opening screen appears automatically.

Choose your language, and then follow the on-screen instructions.



- (Windows7)

If the screen does not appear automatically, go to **Computer**. Double-click the CD-ROM icon, and then double-click **start.exe**.

- (Windows 8.1 and Windows 10)

Click the  (**File Explorer**) icon on the taskbar, and then go to **This PC**. Double-click the CD-ROM icon, and then double-click **start.exe**.

- If the **User Account Control** screen appears, click **Yes**.

3. Choose **Wireless Network Connection (Wi-Fi)**, and then click **Next**.
4. Follow the on-screen instructions.

After you have completed the wireless setup, the installer program walks you through installing the drivers. Click **Next** in the installation dialog box and follow the on-screen instructions.



### Related Information

- [Additional Methods of Configuring Your Machine for a Wireless Network](#)



## Configure Your Machine for a Wireless Network Using the One Push Method of Wi-Fi Protected Setup™ (WPS)

If your wireless access point/router supports WPS (Push Button Configuration), you can use WPS from your machine's control panel menu to configure your wireless network settings.



Routers or access points that support WPS are marked with this symbol:



>> [bizhub 4000i](#)  
>> [bizhub 5000i](#)

### bizhub 4000i

1. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the [Network] option, and then press **OK**.
2. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the [WLAN] option, and then press **OK**.
3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the [WPS] option, and then press **OK**.
4. When [WLAN Enable?] appears, press ▲ to select On.  
This will start the wireless setup wizard. To cancel, press **Cancel**.
5. When the LCD displays [Press Key on rtr], press the WPS button on your wireless access point/router. Press ▲ on the machine's control panel. Your machine will automatically detect your wireless access point/router and try to connect to your wireless network.

If your wireless device is connected successfully, the machine's LCD displays [Connected].

### bizhub 5000i

1. Press  [Settings] > [Network] > [WLAN] > [WPS].
2. When [Switch network interface to wireless?] appears, press [Yes].  
This will start the wireless setup wizard. To cancel, press [No].
3. When the touchscreen displays [Start WPS on your wireless access point/router, then press [OK]], press the WPS button on your wireless access point/router. Then press [OK] on your machine. Your machine will automatically detect your wireless access point/router and try to connect to your wireless network.

If your wireless device is connected successfully, the machine's LCD displays [Connected].



### Related Information

- [Additional Methods of Configuring Your Machine for a Wireless Network](#)

#### Related Topics:

- [Wireless LAN Report Error Codes](#)

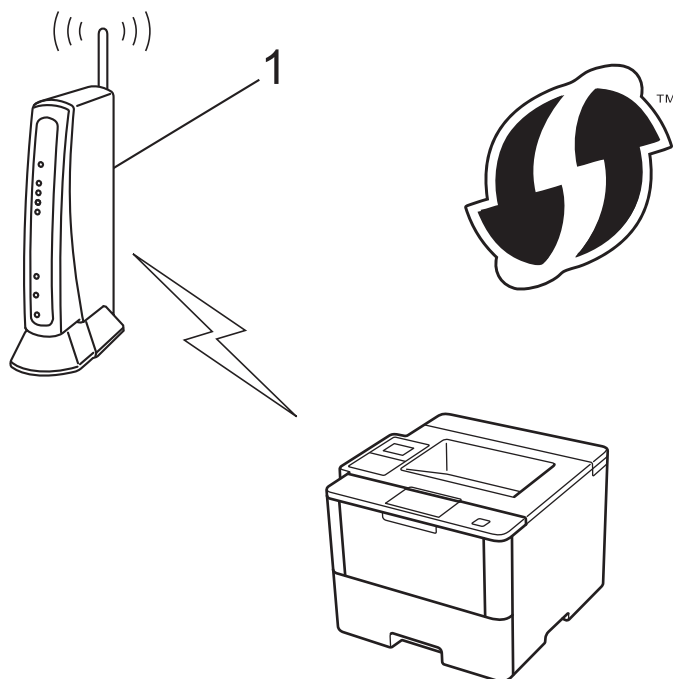
## Configure Your Machine for a Wireless Network Using the PIN Method of Wi-Fi Protected Setup™ (WPS)

If your wireless LAN access point/router supports WPS, you can use the Personal Identification Number (PIN) Method to configure your wireless network settings.

The PIN Method is one of the connection methods developed by the Wi-Fi Alliance®. By submitting a PIN created by an Enrollee (your machine) to the Registrar (a device that manages the wireless LAN), you can set up the wireless network and security settings. For more information on how to access WPS mode, see the instructions provided with your wireless access point/router.

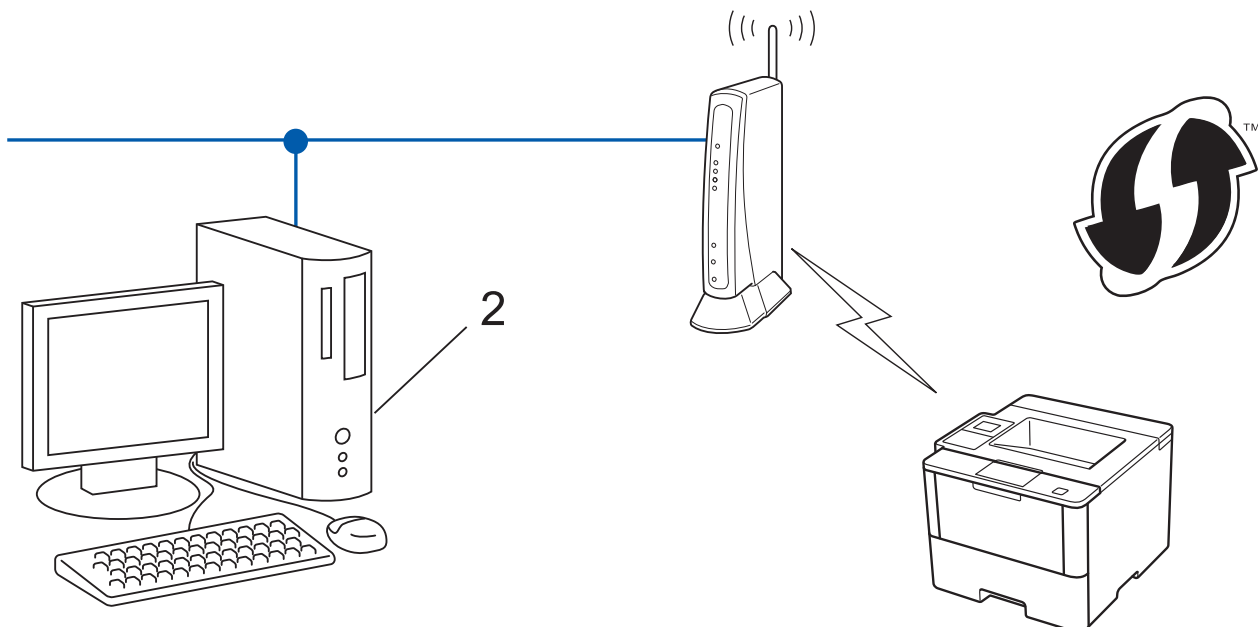
### Type A

Connection when the wireless LAN access point/router (1) doubles as Registrar.



### Type B

Connection when another device (2), such as a computer, is used as Registrar.



Routers or access points that support WPS are marked with this symbol:



>> bizhub 4000i  
>> bizhub 5000i

## **bizhub 4000i**

1. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the [Network] option, and then press **OK**.
2. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the [WLAN] option, and then press **OK**.
3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the [WPS w/PIN Code] option, and then press **OK**.
4. When [WLAN Enable?] appears, press ▲ to select On.  
This will start the wireless setup wizard. To cancel, press **Cancel**.
5. The LCD displays an eight-digit PIN and the machine starts searching for a wireless LAN access point/router.
6. Using a computer that is on the network, type "http://access point's IP address" in your browser (where "access point's IP address" is the IP address of the device that is being used as the Registrar).
7. Go to the WPS settings page and type the PIN, and then follow the on-screen instructions.



- The Registrar is usually the wireless LAN access point/router.
- The settings page will differ depending on the brand of wireless LAN access point/router. For more information, see the instructions supplied with your wireless LAN access point/router.

**If you are using a Windows 7, Windows 8.1, or Windows 10 computer as a Registrar, complete the following steps:**

8. Do one of the following:
  - (Windows 7)

Click  (**Start**) > **Devices and Printers** > **Add a device**.

- (Windows 8.1)

Move your mouse to the lower right corner of your desktop. When the menu bar appears, click **Settings** > **Control Panel** > **Hardware and Sound** > **Devices and Printers** > **Add a device**.

- (Windows 10)

Click  > **Windows System** > **Control Panel**. In the **Hardware and Sound** group, click **Add a device**.



- To use a Windows 7, Windows 8.1, or Windows 10 computer as a Registrar, you must register it to your network in advance. For more information, see the instructions supplied with your wireless LAN access point/router.
- If you use Windows 7, Windows 8.1, or Windows 10 as a Registrar, you can install the printer driver after the wireless configuration by following the on-screen instructions.

9. Select your machine and click **Next**.

10. Type the PIN displayed on the machine's LCD, and then click **Next**.

11. Select your network, and then click **Next**.

12. Click **Close**.

If your wireless device is connected successfully, the machine's LCD displays [Connected].

## bizhub 5000i

1. Press  [Settings] > [Network] > [WLAN] > [WPS w/PIN Code].

2. When [Switch network interface to wireless?] appears, press [Yes].

This will start the wireless setup wizard. To cancel, press [No].

3. The LCD displays an eight-digit PIN and the machine starts searching for a wireless LAN access point/router.

4. Using a computer that is on the network, type "http://access point's IP address" in your browser (where "access point's IP address" is the IP address of the device that is being used as the Registrar).

5. Go to the WPS settings page and type the PIN, and then follow the on-screen instructions.



- The Registrar is usually the wireless LAN access point/router.
- The settings page will differ depending on the brand of wireless LAN access point/router. For more information, see the instructions supplied with your wireless LAN access point/router.

**If you are using a Windows 7, Windows 8.1, or Windows 10 computer as a Registrar, complete the following steps:**

6. Do one of the following:

- (Windows 7)

Click  (**Start**) > **Devices and Printers** > **Add a device**.

- (Windows 8.1)

Move your mouse to the lower right corner of your desktop. When the menu bar appears, click **Settings** > **Control Panel** > **Hardware and Sound** > **Devices and Printers** > **Add a device**.

- (Windows 10)

Click  > **Windows System** > **Control Panel**. In the **Hardware and Sound** group, click **Add a device**.



- To use a Windows 7, Windows 8.1, or Windows 10 computer as a Registrar, you must register it to your network in advance. For more information, see the instructions supplied with your wireless LAN access point/router.
- If you use Windows 7, Windows 8.1, or Windows 10 as a Registrar, you can install the printer driver after the wireless configuration by following the on-screen instructions.

7. Select your machine and click **Next**.

- 
8. Type the PIN displayed on the machine's LCD, and then click **Next**.
  9. Select your network, and then click **Next**.
  10. Click **Close**.

If your wireless device is connected successfully, the machine's LCD displays [Connected].



### Related Information

- [Additional Methods of Configuring Your Machine for a Wireless Network](#)

#### **Related Topics:**

- [Wireless LAN Report Error Codes](#)
-

## **Configure Your Machine for a Wireless Network in Ad-Hoc Mode (For IEEE 802.11b/g/n)**

- [Configure Your Machine for a Wireless Network in Ad-Hoc Mode Using a New SSID](#)
- [Configure Your Machine for a Wireless Network in Ad-Hoc Mode Using an Existing SSID](#)

## Configure Your Machine for a Wireless Network in Ad-Hoc Mode Using a New SSID

You must connect to a new SSID from your computer when it is configured for Ad-Hoc mode.

>> bizhub 4000i

>> bizhub 5000i

### **bizhub 4000i**

1. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the [Network] option, and then press **OK**.
2. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the [WLAN] option, and then press **OK**.
3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the [Setup Wizard] option, and then press **OK**.
4. When [WLAN Enable?] appears, press ▲ to select On.  
This will start the wireless setup wizard. To cancel, press **Cancel**.
5. The machine will search for your network and display a list of available SSIDs. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the [<New SSID>] option, and then press **OK**.
6. Enter the SSID name, and then press **OK**.
7. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the [Ad-hoc] option, and then press **OK**.
8. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the Encryption Type [None] or [WEP], and then press **OK**.
9. If you selected the [WEP] option for Encryption Type, enter the WEP key, and then press **OK**.



Your machine supports the use of the first WEP key only.

10. To apply the settings, press ▲. To cancel, press ▼.
11. The machine will attempt to connect to the wireless device you have selected.

If your wireless device is connected successfully, the machine's LCD displays [Connected].

### **bizhub 5000i**

1. Press  [Settings] > [Network] > [WLAN] > [Setup Wizard].
2. When [Switch network interface to wireless?] appears, press [Yes].  
This will start the wireless setup wizard. To cancel, press [No].
3. The machine will search for your network and display a list of available SSIDs. Press ▲ or ▼ to display the [<New SSID>] option.
4. Press [<New SSID>].
5. Enter the SSID name, and then press [OK].
6. Press [Ad-hoc].
7. Press either [None] or [WEP] to select Encryption Type.
8. If you selected [WEP] for Encryption Type, enter the WEP key, and then press [OK].



• Your machine supports the use of the first WEP key only.

9. To apply the settings, press [Yes]. To cancel, press [No].
10. The machine will attempt to connect to the wireless device you have selected.

If your wireless device is connected successfully, the machine's LCD displays [Connected].



## Related Information

- [Configure Your Machine for a Wireless Network in Ad-Hoc Mode \(For IEEE 802.11b/g/n\)](#)

### **Related Topics:**

- [How to Enter Text on Your Machine](#)
  - [Wireless LAN Report Error Codes](#)
-



## Configure Your Machine for a Wireless Network in Ad-Hoc Mode Using an Existing SSID

If you are trying to pair your machine to a computer that is already in Ad-Hoc mode and has a configured SSID, use these instructions.

>> bizhub 4000i  
>> bizhub 5000i

### bizhub 4000i

Before configuring your machine, we recommend writing down your wireless network settings. You will need this information before you continue with the configuration.

1. Check and record the current wireless network settings of the computer to which you are connecting.



The wireless network settings of the computer you are connecting with must be set to Ad-Hoc mode with an SSID already configured. For more information on how to configure your computer in Ad-Hoc mode, see the instructions included with your computer or contact your network administrator.

| Network Name (SSID) |                 |             |
|---------------------|-----------------|-------------|
|                     |                 |             |
| Communication Mode  | Encryption Mode | Network Key |
| Ad-Hoc              | NONE            | -           |
|                     | WEP             |             |

For example:

| Network Name (SSID) |                 |             |
|---------------------|-----------------|-------------|
| HELLO               |                 |             |
| Communication Mode  | Encryption Mode | Network Key |
| Ad-Hoc              | WEP             | 12345       |



Your machine supports the use of the first WEP key only.

2. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the [Network] option, and then press **OK**.
3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the [WLAN] option, and then press **OK**.
4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the [Setup Wizard] option, and then press **OK**.
5. When [WLAN Enable?] appears, press ▲ to select On.  
This will start the wireless setup wizard. To cancel, press **Cancel**.
6. The machine will search for your network and display a list of available SSIDs. When a list of SSIDs appears, press ▲ or ▼ to select the SSID you want.
7. Press **OK**.
8. Enter the WEP key, and then press **OK**.  
To apply the settings, press ▲. To cancel, press ▼.



Your machine supports the use of the first WEP key only.

9. The machine will attempt to connect to the wireless device you have selected.

If your wireless device is connected successfully, the machine's LCD displays [Connected].

## bizhub 5000i

Before configuring your machine, we recommend writing down your wireless network settings. You will need this information before you continue with the configuration.

1. Check and record the current wireless network settings of the computer to which you are connecting.



The wireless network settings of the computer you are connecting with must be set to Ad-Hoc mode with an SSID already configured. For more information on how to configure your computer in Ad-Hoc mode, see the instructions included with your computer or contact your network administrator.

| Network Name (SSID) |  |  |
|---------------------|--|--|
|                     |  |  |

| Communication Mode | Encryption Mode | Network Key |
|--------------------|-----------------|-------------|
| Ad-Hoc             | NONE            | -           |
|                    | WEP             |             |

For example:

| Network Name (SSID) |  |  |
|---------------------|--|--|
| HELLO               |  |  |

| Communication Mode | Encryption Mode | Network Key |
|--------------------|-----------------|-------------|
| Ad-Hoc             | WEP             | 12345       |



Your machine supports the use of the first WEP key only.

2. Press  [Settings] > [Network] > [WLAN] > [Setup Wizard].
3. When [Switch network interface to wireless?] appears, press [Yes].  
This will start the wireless setup wizard. To cancel, press [No].
4. The machine will search for your network and display a list of available SSIDs. When a list of SSIDs appears, press ▲ or ▼ to select the SSID you want, and then press the SSID.  
Enter the WEP key, and then press [OK].  
To apply the settings, press [Yes]. To cancel, press [No].



- Your machine supports the use of the first WEP key only.

5. The machine attempts to connect to the wireless device you have selected.

If your wireless device is connected successfully, the machine's LCD displays [Connected].



## Related Information

- [Configure Your Machine for a Wireless Network in Ad-Hoc Mode \(For IEEE 802.11b/g/n\)](#)

### Related Topics:

- [How to Enter Text on Your Machine](#)
- [Wireless LAN Report Error Codes](#)

## Configure Your Machine for a Wireless Network Using the Machine's Control Panel Setup Wizard

>> bizhub 4000i  
>> bizhub 5000i

### bizhub 4000i

Before configuring your machine, we recommend writing down your wireless network settings. You will need this information before you continue with the configuration.

1. Check and record the current wireless network settings of the computer to which you are connecting.

| Network Name (SSID) |
|---------------------|
|                     |

| Network Key |
|-------------|
|             |

For example:

| Network Name (SSID) |
|---------------------|
| HELLO               |

| Network Key |
|-------------|
| 12345       |



- Your access point/router may support the use of multiple WEP keys, however your machine supports the use of the first WEP key only.
- If you need assistance during setup and want to contact customer support, make sure you have your SSID (Network Name) and Network Key ready. We cannot assist you in locating this information.
- If you do not know this information (SSID and Network Key), you cannot continue the wireless setup.

#### How can I find this information?

- Check the documentation provided with your wireless access point/router.
- The initial SSID could be the manufacturer's name or the model name.
- If you do not know the security information, please consult the router manufacture, your system administrator, or your Internet provider.

2. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the [Network] option, and then press **OK**.
3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the [WLAN] option, and then press **OK**.
4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the [Setup Wizard] option, and then press **OK**.
5. When [WLAN Enable?] appears, press ▲ to select On.  
This will start the wireless setup wizard. To cancel, press **Cancel**.
6. The machine will search for your network and display a list of available SSIDs. When a list of SSIDs appears, press ▲ or ▼ to select the SSID you want.
7. Press **OK**.
8. Do one of the following:
  - If you are using an authentication and encryption method that requires a Network Key, enter the Network Key you wrote down in the first step.  
Enter the key, and then press **OK** to apply your settings.

To apply the settings, press ▲. To cancel, press ▼.

- If your authentication method is Open System and your encryption mode is None, go to the next step.

9. The machine attempts to connect to the wireless device you have selected.

If your wireless device is connected successfully, the machine's LCD displays [Connected].

## bizhub 5000i

Before configuring your machine, we recommend writing down your wireless network settings. You will need this information before you continue with the configuration.

1. Check and record the current wireless network settings of the computer to which you are connecting.

### Network Name (SSID)

|  |
|--|
|  |
|--|

### Network Key

|  |
|--|
|  |
|--|

For example:

### Network Name (SSID)

HELLO

### Network Key

12345



- Your access point/router may support the use of multiple WEP keys, however your machine supports the use of the first WEP key only.
- If you need assistance during setup and want to contact customer support, make sure you have your SSID (Network Name) and Network Key ready. We cannot assist you in locating this information.
- If you do not know this information (SSID and Network Key), you cannot continue the wireless setup.

### How can I find this information?

- Check the documentation provided with your wireless access point/router.
- The initial SSID could be the manufacturer's name or the model name.
- If you do not know the security information, please consult the router manufacture, your system administrator, or your Internet provider.

2. Press  [Settings] > [Network] > [WLAN] > [Setup Wizard].

3. When [Switch network interface to wireless?] appears, press [Yes].

This will start the wireless setup wizard. To cancel, press [No].

4. The machine will search for your network and display a list of available SSIDs.

If a list of SSIDs is displayed, press ▲ or ▼ to display the SSID to which you want to connect, and then press the SSID.

5. Do one of the following:

- If you are using an authentication and encryption method that requires a Network Key, enter the Network Key you wrote down in the first step.

When you have entered all the characters, press [OK] and then press [Yes] to apply your settings.

- If your authentication method is Open System and your encryption mode is None, go to the next step.

6. The machine attempts to connect to the wireless device you have selected.

If your wireless device is connected successfully, the machine's LCD displays [Connected].



## Related Information

- [Additional Methods of Configuring Your Machine for a Wireless Network](#)

### **Related Topics:**

- [How to Enter Text on Your Machine](#)
  - [Wireless LAN Report Error Codes](#)
-

## Configure Your Machine for a Wireless Network When the SSID Is Not Broadcast

>> bizhub 4000i  
>> bizhub 5000i

### bizhub 4000i

Before configuring your machine, we recommend writing down your wireless network settings. You will need this information before you continue with the configuration.

1. Check and record the current wireless network settings.

| Network Name (SSID) |                       |                                               |             |
|---------------------|-----------------------|-----------------------------------------------|-------------|
|                     |                       |                                               |             |
| Communication Mode  | Authentication Method | Encryption Mode                               | Network Key |
| Infrastructure      | Open System           | NONE                                          | -           |
|                     |                       | WEP                                           |             |
|                     | Shared Key            | WEP                                           |             |
|                     | WPA/WPA2-PSK          | AES                                           |             |
|                     |                       | TKIP<br>(TKIP is supported for WPA-PSK only.) |             |

For example:

| Network Name (SSID) |                       |                 |             |
|---------------------|-----------------------|-----------------|-------------|
| HELLO               |                       |                 |             |
| Communication Mode  | Authentication Method | Encryption Mode | Network Key |
| Infrastructure      | WPA2-PSK              | AES             | 12345678    |



If your router uses WEP encryption, enter the key used as the first WEP key. Your machine supports the use of the first WEP key only.

2. Press **▲** or **▼** to select the [Network] option, and then press **OK**.
3. Press **▲** or **▼** to select the [WLAN] option, and then press **OK**.
4. Press **▲** or **▼** to select the [Setup Wizard] option, and then press **OK**.
5. When [WLAN Enable?] appears, press **▲** to select On.  
This will start the wireless setup wizard. To cancel, press **Cancel**.
6. The machine will search for your network and display a list of available SSIDs. Press **▲** or **▼** to select the [<New SSID>] option, and then press **OK**.
7. Enter the SSID name, and then press **OK**.
8. Press **▲** or **▼** to select the [Infrastructure] option, and then press **OK**.
9. Press **▲** or **▼** to select the Authentication Method you want, and then press **OK**.
10. Do one of the following:
  - If you selected the [Open System] option, press **▲** or **▼** to select the Encryption Type [None] or [WEP], and then press **OK**.
  - If you selected the [WEP] option for Encryption Type, enter the WEP key, and then press **OK**.

- If you selected the [Shared Key] option, enter the WEP key, and then press **OK**.
- If you selected the [WPA/WPA2-PSK] option, press ▲ or ▼ to select the Encryption Type [TKIP+AES] or [AES], and then press **OK**.

Enter the WPA key, and then press **OK**.



Your machine supports the use of the first WEP key only.

11. To apply the settings, press ▲. To cancel, press ▼.

12. The machine will attempt to connect to the wireless device you have selected.

If your wireless device is connected successfully, the machine's LCD displays [Connected].

## bizhub 5000i

Before configuring your machine, we recommend writing down your wireless network settings. You will need this information before you continue with the configuration.

1. Check and record the current wireless network settings.

| Network Name (SSID) |  |  |  |
|---------------------|--|--|--|
|                     |  |  |  |

| Communication Mode | Authentication Method | Encryption Mode                               | Network Key |
|--------------------|-----------------------|-----------------------------------------------|-------------|
| Infrastructure     | Open System           | NONE                                          | -           |
|                    |                       | WEP                                           |             |
|                    | Shared Key            | WEP                                           |             |
|                    | WPA/WPA2-PSK          | AES                                           |             |
|                    |                       | TKIP<br>(TKIP is supported for WPA-PSK only.) |             |

For example:

| Network Name (SSID) |  |  |  |
|---------------------|--|--|--|
| HELLO               |  |  |  |

| Communication Mode | Authentication Method | Encryption Mode | Network Key |
|--------------------|-----------------------|-----------------|-------------|
| Infrastructure     | WPA2-PSK              | AES             | 12345678    |



If your router uses WEP encryption, enter the key used as the first WEP key. Your machine supports the use of the first WEP key only.

2. Press  [Settings] > [Network] > [WLAN] > [Setup Wizard].
3. When [Switch network interface to wireless?] appears, press [Yes].  
This will start the wireless setup wizard. To cancel, press [No].
4. The machine will search for your network and display a list of available SSIDs. Press ▲ or ▼ to display the [<New SSID>] option.
5. Press [<New SSID>].
6. Enter the SSID name, and then press [OK].
7. Press [Infrastructure].
8. Press ▲ or ▼ to display the Authentication Method you want.
9. Press the Authentication Method you want.
10. Do one of the following:

- If you selected the [Open System] option, press either [None] or [WEP].  
If you selected the [WEP] option for Encryption Type, enter the WEP key, and then press [OK].
- If you selected the [Shared Key] option, enter the WEP key, and then press [OK].
- If you selected the [WPA/WPA2-PSK] option, press either [TKIP+AES] or [AES] for Encryption Type.  
Enter the WPA key, and then press [OK].



- Your machine supports the use of the first WEP key only.

11. To apply the settings, press [Yes]. To cancel, press [No].

12. The machine will attempt to connect to the wireless device you have selected.

If your wireless device is connected successfully, the machine's LCD displays [Connected].



## Related Information

- [Additional Methods of Configuring Your Machine for a Wireless Network](#)

### Related Topics:

- [I Cannot Complete the Wireless Network Setup Configuration](#)
- [How to Enter Text on Your Machine](#)
- [Wireless LAN Report Error Codes](#)



## Configure Your Machine for an Enterprise Wireless Network

>> bizhub 4000i  
>> bizhub 5000i

### bizhub 4000i

Before configuring your machine, we recommend writing down your wireless network settings. You will need this information before you continue with the configuration.

1. Check and record the current wireless network settings.

| Network Name (SSID) |  |  |  |  |
|---------------------|--|--|--|--|
|                     |  |  |  |  |

| Communication Mode | Authentication Method | Encryption Mode | User ID | Password |
|--------------------|-----------------------|-----------------|---------|----------|
| Infrastructure     | LEAP                  | CKIP            |         |          |
|                    |                       |                 |         |          |
|                    | EAP-FAST/NONE         | AES             |         |          |
|                    |                       | TKIP            |         |          |
|                    | EAP-FAST/MS-CHAPv2    | AES             |         |          |
|                    |                       | TKIP            |         |          |
|                    | EAP-FAST/GTC          | AES             |         |          |
|                    |                       | TKIP            |         |          |
|                    | PEAP/MS-CHAPv2        | AES             |         |          |
|                    |                       | TKIP            |         |          |
|                    | PEAP/GTC              | AES             |         |          |
|                    |                       | TKIP            |         |          |
|                    | EAP-TTLS/CHAP         | AES             |         |          |
|                    |                       | TKIP            |         |          |
|                    | EAP-TTLS/MS-CHAP      | AES             |         |          |
|                    |                       | TKIP            |         |          |
|                    | EAP-TTLS/MS-CHAPv2    | AES             |         |          |
|                    |                       | TKIP            |         |          |
|                    | EAP-TTLS/PAP          | AES             |         |          |
|                    |                       | TKIP            |         |          |
|                    | EAP-TLS               | AES             |         | -        |
|                    |                       | TKIP            |         | -        |

For example:

| Network Name (SSID) |  |  |  |  |
|---------------------|--|--|--|--|
| HELLO               |  |  |  |  |

| Communication Mode | Authentication Method | Encryption Mode | User ID | Password |
|--------------------|-----------------------|-----------------|---------|----------|
| Infrastructure     | EAP-FAST/MS-CHAPv2    | AES             | User001 | 12345678 |



- If you configure your machine using EAP-TLS authentication, you must install the client certificate issued by a CA before you start configuration. Contact your network administrator about the client certificate. If you have installed more than one certificate, we recommend writing down the certificate name you want to use.
- If you verify your machine using the common name of the server certificate, we recommend writing down the common name before you start configuration. Contact your network administrator about the common name of the server certificate.

2. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the [Network] option, and then press **OK**.
3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the [WLAN] option, and then press **OK**.
4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the [Setup Wizard] option, and then press **OK**.
5. When [WLAN Enable?] appears, press ▲ to select On.  
This will start the wireless setup wizard. To cancel, press **Cancel**.
6. The machine will search for your network and display a list of available SSIDs. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the [<New SSID>] option, and then press **OK**.
7. Enter the SSID name, and then press **OK**.
8. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the [Infrastructure] option, and then press **OK**.
9. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the Authentication Method you want, and then press **OK**.
10. Do one of the following:
  - If you selected the [LEAP] option, enter the user ID, and then press **OK**.  
Enter the Password, and then press **OK**.
  - If you selected the [EAP-FAST], [PEAP] or [EAP-TTLS] option, press ▲ or ▼ to select the Inner Authentication Method [NONE], [CHAP], [MS-CHAP], [MS-CHAPv2], [PAP] or [GTC], and then press **OK**.



Depending on your Authentication Method, the Inner Authentication Method selections differ.

Press ▲ or ▼ to select the Encryption Type [TKIP+AES] or [AES], and then press **OK**.

Press ▲ or ▼ to select the Verification Method [No Verification], [CA] or [CA+Server ID], and then press **OK**.

- If you selected the [CA+Server ID] option, enter the server ID, user ID and password (if required), and then press **OK** for each option.
- For other selections, enter the user ID and the Password, and then press **OK** for each option.



If you have not imported a CA certificate into your machine, the machine will display the message [No Verification].

- If you selected the [EAP-TLS] option, press ▲ or ▼ to select the Encryption Type [TKIP+AES] or [AES], and then press **OK**.  
When the machine displays a list of available Client Certificates, select the certificate you want.  
Press ▲ or ▼ to select the Verification Method [No Verification], [CA] or [CA+Server ID], and then press **OK**.
  - If you selected the [CA+Server ID] option, enter the server ID and user ID, and then press **OK** for each option.
  - For other selections, enter the user ID, and then press **OK**.



If you have not imported a CA certificate into your machine, the machine will display the message [No Verification].

11. To apply the settings, press ▲. To cancel, press ▼.
12. The machine will attempt to connect to the wireless device you have selected.

If your wireless device is connected successfully, the machine's LCD displays [Connected].

Before configuring your machine, we recommend writing down your wireless network settings. You will need this information before you continue with the configuration.

1. Check and record the current wireless network settings.

| Network Name (SSID) |                       |                 |         |          |
|---------------------|-----------------------|-----------------|---------|----------|
|                     |                       |                 |         |          |
| Communication Mode  | Authentication Method | Encryption Mode | User ID | Password |
| Infrastructure      | LEAP                  | CKIP            |         |          |
|                     |                       |                 |         |          |
|                     | EAP-FAST/NONE         | AES             |         |          |
|                     |                       | TKIP            |         |          |
|                     | EAP-FAST/MS-CHOPv2    | AES             |         |          |
|                     |                       | TKIP            |         |          |
|                     | EAP-FAST/GTC          | AES             |         |          |
|                     |                       | TKIP            |         |          |
|                     | PEAP/MS-CHAPv2        | AES             |         |          |
|                     |                       | TKIP            |         |          |
|                     | PEAP/GTC              | AES             |         |          |
|                     |                       | TKIP            |         |          |
|                     | EAP-TTLS/CHAP         | AES             |         |          |
|                     |                       | TKIP            |         |          |
|                     | EAP-TTLS/MS-CHAP      | AES             |         |          |
|                     |                       | TKIP            |         |          |
|                     | EAP-TTLS/MS-CHAPv2    | AES             |         |          |
|                     |                       | TKIP            |         |          |
|                     | EAP-TTLS/PAP          | AES             |         |          |
|                     |                       | TKIP            |         |          |
|                     | EAP-TLS               | AES             |         | -        |
|                     |                       | TKIP            |         | -        |

For example:

| Network Name (SSID) |                       |                 |         |          |
|---------------------|-----------------------|-----------------|---------|----------|
| HELLO               |                       |                 |         |          |
| Communication Mode  | Authentication Method | Encryption Mode | User ID | Password |
| Infrastructure      | EAP-FAST/MS-CHOPv2    | AES             | User001 | 12345678 |



- If you configure your machine using EAP-TLS authentication, you must install the client certificate issued by a CA before you start configuration. Contact your network administrator about the client certificate. If you have installed more than one certificate, we recommend writing down the certificate name you want to use.
- If you verify your machine using the common name of the server certificate, we recommend writing down the common name before you start configuration. Contact your network administrator about the common name of the server certificate.

2. Press  [Settings] > [Network] > [WLAN] > [Setup Wizard].
3. When [Switch network interface to wireless?] appears, press [Yes].  
This will start the wireless setup wizard. To cancel, press [No].
4. The machine will search for your network and display a list of available SSIDs. Press ▲ or ▼ to display the [<New SSID>] option.
5. Press [<New SSID>].
6. Enter the SSID name, and then press [OK].
7. Press [Infrastructure].
8. Press ▲ or ▼ to display the Authentication Method you want.
9. Press the Authentication Method you want.
10. Do one of the following:
  - If you selected the [LEAP] option, enter the user ID, and then press [OK]. Enter the Password, and then press [OK].
  - If you selected the [EAP-FAST], [PEAP] or [EAP-TTLS] option, press ▲ or ▼ to select the Inner Authentication Method [NONE], [CHAP], [MS-CHAP], [MS-CHAPv2], [GTC] or [PAP].



Depending on your Authentication Method, the Inner Authentication Method selections differ.

Press ▲ or ▼ to select the Encryption Type [TKIP+AES] or [AES].

Press ▲ or ▼ to select the Verification Method [No Verification], [CA] or [CA + Server ID].

- If you selected the [CA + Server ID] option, enter the server ID, user ID and password (if required), and then press [OK] for each option.
- For other selections, enter the user ID and Password, and then press [OK] for each option.



If you have not imported a CA certificate into your machine, the machine will display the message [No Verification].

- If you selected the [EAP-TLS] option, press ▲ or ▼ to select the Encryption Type [TKIP+AES] or [AES].  
When the machine displays a list of available Client Certificates, select the certificate you want.  
Press ▲ or ▼ to select the Verification Method [No Verification], [CA] or [CA + Server ID].
  - If you selected the [CA + Server ID] option, enter the server ID and user ID, and then press [OK] for each option.
  - For other selections, enter the user ID, and then press [OK].



If you have not imported a CA certificate into your machine, the machine will display the message [No Verification].

11. To apply the settings, press [Yes]. To cancel, press [No].
12. The machine attempts to connect to the wireless device you have selected.

If your wireless device is connected successfully, the machine's LCD displays [Connected].



## Related Information

- [Additional Methods of Configuring Your Machine for a Wireless Network](#)

---

**Related Topics:**

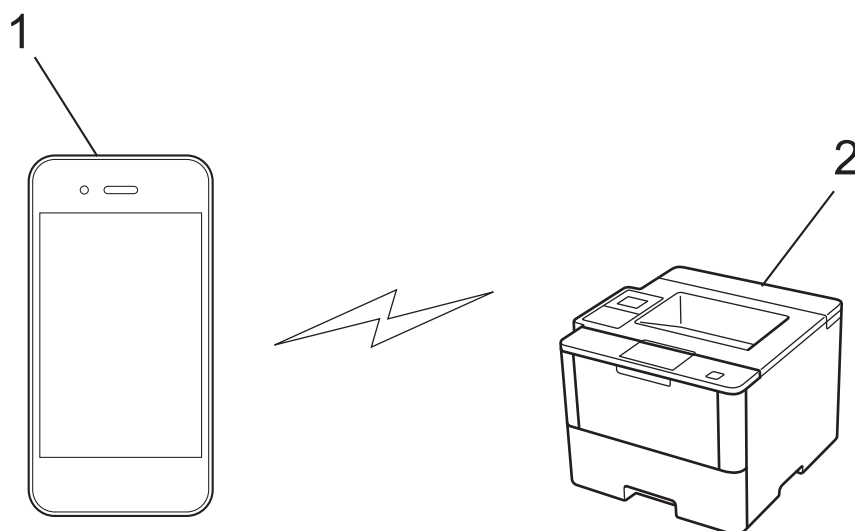
- [Wireless LAN Report Error Codes](#)
-

## Use Wi-Fi Direct®

- [Print from Your Mobile Device Using Wi-Fi Direct](#)
- [Configure Your Wi-Fi Direct Network](#)
- [I Cannot Complete the Wireless Network Setup Configuration](#)

## Print from Your Mobile Device Using Wi-Fi Direct

Wi-Fi Direct is one of the wireless configuration methods developed by the Wi-Fi Alliance®. It allows you to configure a secured wireless network between your machine and a mobile device, such as an Android™ device, Windows Phone device, iPhone, iPod touch, or iPad, without using an access point. Wi-Fi Direct supports wireless network configuration using the one-push or PIN Method of Wi-Fi Protected Setup™ (WPS). You can also configure a wireless network by manually setting an SSID and password. Your machine's Wi-Fi Direct feature supports WPA2™ security with AES encryption.



1. Mobile device
2. Your machine



- Although your machine can be used in both a wired and wireless network, only one connection method can be used at a time. However, a wireless network connection and Wi-Fi Direct connection, or a wired network connection and Wi-Fi Direct connection can be used at the same time.
- The Wi-Fi Direct-supported device can become a Group Owner (G/O). When configuring the Wi-Fi Direct network, the G/O serves as an access point.
- Ad-hoc mode and Wi-Fi Direct cannot be used at the same time. Disable one function to enable the other. If you want to use Wi-Fi Direct while you are using Ad-hoc mode, set Network I/F to Wired LAN or disable Ad-hoc mode and connect your machine to the access point.



### Related Information

- [Use Wi-Fi Direct®](#)

## Configure Your Wi-Fi Direct Network

Configure your Wi-Fi Direct network settings from your machine's control panel.

- [Wi-Fi Direct Network Configuration Overview](#)
- [Configure Your Wi-Fi Direct Network Using the One-Push Method](#)
- [Configure Your Wi-Fi Direct Network Using the One-Push Method and Wi-Fi Protected Setup™ \(WPS\)](#)
- [Configure Your Wi-Fi Direct Network Using the PIN Method](#)
- [Configure Your Wi-Fi Direct Network Using the PIN Method of Wi-Fi Protected Setup™ \(WPS\)](#)
- [Configure Your Wi-Fi Direct Network Manually](#)



## Wi-Fi Direct Network Configuration Overview

The following instructions offer five methods for configuring your machine in a wireless network environment. Select the method you prefer for your environment.

Check your mobile device for configuration.

1. Does your mobile device support Wi-Fi Direct?

| Option | Description  |
|--------|--------------|
| Yes    | Go to Step 2 |
| No     | Go to Step 3 |

2. Does your mobile device support one-push configuration for Wi-Fi Direct?

| Option | Description                                                                                     |
|--------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Yes    | See <i>Related Information</i> : Configure Your Wi-Fi Direct Network Using the One-Push Method. |
| No     | See <i>Related Information</i> : Configure Your Wi-Fi Direct Network Using the PIN Method.      |

3. Does your mobile device support Wi-Fi Protected Setup™ (WPS)?

| Option | Description                                                                    |
|--------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Yes    | Go to Step 4                                                                   |
| No     | See <i>Related Information</i> : Configure Your Wi-Fi Direct Network Manually. |

4. Does your mobile device support one-push configuration for Wi-Fi Protected Setup™ (WPS)?

| Option | Description                                                                                                                      |
|--------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Yes    | See <i>Related Information</i> : Configure Your Wi-Fi Direct Network Using the One-Push Method and Wi-Fi Protected Setup™ (WPS). |
| No     | See <i>Related Information</i> : Configure Your Wi-Fi Direct Network Using the PIN Method of Wi-Fi Protected Setup™ (WPS).       |

To use Konica Minolta Mobile Print functionality in a Wi-Fi Direct network configured by one-push configuration using Wi-Fi Direct or by PIN Method configuration using Wi-Fi Direct, the device you use to configure Wi-Fi Direct must be running Android™ 4.0 or greater.



### Related Information

- [Configure Your Wi-Fi Direct Network](#)

#### Related Topics:

- [Configure Your Wi-Fi Direct Network Using the One-Push Method](#)
- [Configure Your Wi-Fi Direct Network Using the One-Push Method and Wi-Fi Protected Setup™ \(WPS\)](#)
- [Configure Your Wi-Fi Direct Network Using the PIN Method](#)
- [Configure Your Wi-Fi Direct Network Using the PIN Method of Wi-Fi Protected Setup™ \(WPS\)](#)
- [Configure Your Wi-Fi Direct Network Manually](#)

## Configure Your Wi-Fi Direct Network Using the One-Push Method

>> bizhub 4000i  
>> bizhub 5000i

### bizhub 4000i

If your mobile device supports Wi-Fi Direct, follow these steps to configure a Wi-Fi Direct network:

1. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the [Network] option, and then press **OK**.
2. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the [Wi-Fi Direct] option, and then press **OK**.
3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the [Push Button] option, and then press **OK**.
4. When [Wi-Fi Direct On?] appears, press ▲ to accept. To cancel, press ▼.
5. Activate Wi-Fi Direct on your mobile device when [Activate Wi-Fi Direct on other device and press OK.] appears on the machine's LCD. Press **OK** on your machine.  
This will start the Wi-Fi Direct setup. To cancel, press **Cancel**.
6. Do one of the following:
  - When your machine is the Group Owner (G/O), connect your mobile device to the machine directly.
  - When your machine is not the G/O, it will display available device names with which to configure a Wi-Fi Direct network. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the mobile device you want to connect to and press **OK**. Search for available devices again by pressing [<Rescan>].
7. If your mobile device connects successfully, the machine's LCD displays [Connected]. You have completed the Wi-Fi Direct network setup.

### bizhub 5000i

If your mobile device supports Wi-Fi Direct, follow these steps to configure a Wi-Fi Direct network:

1. Press  [Settings] > [Network] > [Wi-Fi Direct] > [Push Button].
2. When [Wi-Fi Direct on?] appears, press [On] to accept. To cancel, press [Off].
3. Activate Wi-Fi Direct on your mobile device when [Activate Wi-Fi Direct on other device. Then press [OK].] appears on the machine's LCD. Press [OK] on your machine.  
This will start the Wi-Fi Direct setup. To cancel, press .
4. Do one of the following:
  - When your machine is the Group Owner (G/O), connect your mobile device to the machine directly.
  - When your machine is not the G/O, it will display available device names with which to configure a Wi-Fi Direct network. Select the mobile device you want to connect to and press [OK]. Search for available devices again by pressing [Rescan].
5. If your mobile device connects successfully, the machine's LCD displays [Connected]. You have completed the Wi-Fi Direct network setup.

### ✓ Related Information

- [Configure Your Wi-Fi Direct Network](#)

#### Related Topics:

- [Wi-Fi Direct Network Configuration Overview](#)

## Configure Your Wi-Fi Direct Network Using the One-Push Method and Wi-Fi Protected Setup™ (WPS)

>> bizhub 4000i  
>> bizhub 5000i

### bizhub 4000i

If your mobile device supports WPS (PBC; Push Button Configuration), follow these steps to configure a Wi-Fi Direct network:

1. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the [Network] option, and then press **OK**.
2. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the [Wi-Fi Direct] option, and then press **OK**.
3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the [Group Owner] option, and then press **OK**.
4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the [On] option, and then press **OK**.
5. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the [Push Button] option, and then press **OK**.
6. When [Wi-Fi Direct On?] appears, press ▲ to accept. To cancel, press ▼.
7. Activate your mobile device's WPS one-push configuration method when [Activate Wi-Fi Direct on other device and press OK.] appears on the machine's LCD. Press **OK** on your machine.  
This will start the Wi-Fi Direct setup. To cancel, press **Cancel**.
8. If your mobile device connects successfully, the machine's LCD displays [Connected]. You have completed the Wi-Fi Direct network setup.

### bizhub 5000i

If your mobile device supports WPS (PBC; Push Button Configuration), follow these steps to configure a Wi-Fi Direct network.

1. Press  [Settings] > [Network] > [Wi-Fi Direct] > [Group Owner].
2. Press [On].
3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the [Push Button] option. Press [Push Button].
4. When [Wi-Fi Direct on?] appears, press [On] to accept. To cancel, press [Off].
5. Activate your mobile device's WPS one-push configuration method when [Activate Wi-Fi Direct on other device. Then press [OK].] appears on the machine's LCD. Press [OK] on your machine.  
This will start the Wi-Fi Direct setup. To cancel, press .
6. If your mobile device connects successfully, the machine's LCD displays [Connected]. You have completed the Wi-Fi Direct network setup.

### ✓ Related Information

- [Configure Your Wi-Fi Direct Network](#)

#### Related Topics:

- [Wi-Fi Direct Network Configuration Overview](#)

## Configure Your Wi-Fi Direct Network Using the PIN Method

>> bizhub 4000i  
>> bizhub 5000i

### bizhub 4000i

If your mobile device supports the PIN Method of Wi-Fi Direct, follow these steps to configure a Wi-Fi Direct network:

1. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the [Network] option, and then press **OK**.
2. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the [Wi-Fi Direct] option, and then press **OK**.
3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the [PIN Code] option, and then press **OK**.
4. When [Wi-Fi Direct On?] appears, press ▲ to accept. To cancel, press ▼.
5. Activate Wi-Fi Direct on your mobile device when [Activate Wi-Fi Direct on other device and press OK.] appears on the machine's LCD. Press **OK** on your machine.  
This will start the Wi-Fi Direct setup. To cancel, press **Cancel**.
6. Do one of the following:
  - When your machine is the Group Owner (G/O), it will wait for a connection request from your mobile device. When [Input PIN Code] appears, enter the PIN displayed on your mobile device in your machine. Press **OK** to complete the setup.  
If the PIN is displayed on your machine, enter the PIN in your mobile device.
  - When your machine is not the G/O, it will display available device names with which to configure a Wi-Fi Direct network. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the mobile device you want to connect to and press **OK**. Search for available devices again by pressing [<Rescan>], and then go to the next step.
7. Do one of the following:
  - Press ▲ to display the PIN on your machine, enter the PIN in your mobile device, and then go to the next step.
  - Press ▼ to enter the PIN displayed by your mobile device in your machine. Press **OK**, and then go to the next step.  
If your mobile device does not display a PIN, press **Cancel** on your machine. Go back to the first step and try again.
8. If your mobile device connects successfully, the machine's LCD displays [Connected]. You have completed the Wi-Fi Direct network setup.

### bizhub 5000i

If your mobile device supports the PIN Method of Wi-Fi Direct, follow these steps to configure a Wi-Fi Direct network:

1. Press  [Settings] > [Network] > [Wi-Fi Direct] > [PIN Code].
2. When [Wi-Fi Direct on?] appears, press [On] to accept. To cancel, press [Off].
3. Activate Wi-Fi Direct on your mobile device when [Activate Wi-Fi Direct on other device. Then press [OK].] appears on the machine's LCD. Press [OK] on your machine.  
This will start the Wi-Fi Direct setup. To cancel, press .
4. Do one of the following:
  - When your machine is the Group Owner (G/O), it will wait for a connection request from your mobile device. When [PIN Code] appears, enter the PIN displayed on your mobile device in the machine. Press [OK] to complete the setup.  
If the PIN is displayed on your machine, enter the PIN in your mobile device.

- 
- When your machine is not the G/O, it will display available device names with which to configure a Wi-Fi Direct network. Select the mobile device to which you want to connect and press [OK]. Search for available devices again by pressing [Rescan], and then go to the next step.
5. Do one of the following:
- Press [Display PIN Code] to display the PIN on your machine and enter the PIN in your mobile device. Go to the next step.
  - Press [Input PIN Code] to enter a PIN displayed by your mobile device in the machine, and then press [OK]. Go to the next step.
- If your mobile device does not display a PIN, press  on your machine. Go back to the first step and try again.
6. If your mobile device connects successfully, the machine's LCD displays [Connected]. You have completed the Wi-Fi Direct network setup.



### Related Information

- [Configure Your Wi-Fi Direct Network](#)

#### Related Topics:

- [Wi-Fi Direct Network Configuration Overview](#)
-

## Configure Your Wi-Fi Direct Network Using the PIN Method of Wi-Fi Protected Setup™ (WPS)

>> [bizhub 4000i](#)  
>> [bizhub 5000i](#)

### bizhub 4000i

If your mobile device supports the PIN Method of Wi-Fi Protected Setup™ (WPS), follow these steps to configure a Wi-Fi Direct network.

1. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the [Network] option, and then press **OK**.
2. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the [Wi-Fi Direct] option, and then press **OK**.
3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the [Group Owner] option, and then press **OK**.
4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the [On] option, and then press **OK**.
5. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the [PIN Code] option, and then press **OK**.
6. When [Wi-Fi Direct On?] appears, press ▲ to accept. To cancel, press ▼.
7. Activate your mobile device's WPS PIN configuration method when [Activate Wi-Fi Direct on other device and press OK.] appears on the machine's LCD. Press **OK** on your machine.  
This will start the Wi-Fi Direct setup. To cancel, press **Cancel**.
8. The machine will wait for a connection request from your mobile device. When [Input PIN Code] appears, enter the PIN displayed on your mobile device in the machine.
9. Press **OK**.
10. If your mobile device connects successfully, the machine's LCD displays [Connected]. You have completed the Wi-Fi Direct network setup.

### bizhub 5000i

If your mobile device supports the PIN Method of Wi-Fi Protected Setup™ (WPS), follow these steps to configure a Wi-Fi Direct network.

1. Press  [Settings] > [Network] > [Wi-Fi Direct] > [Group Owner].
2. Press [On].
3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the [PIN Code], and then press [OK].
4. When [Wi-Fi Direct on?] appears, press [On] to accept. To cancel, press [Off].
5. Activate your mobile device's WPS PIN configuration method when [Activate Wi-Fi Direct on other device. Then press [OK].] appears on the machine's LCD.
6. Press [OK] on your machine.

This will start the Wi-Fi Direct setup. To cancel, press .

7. The machine will wait for a connection request from your mobile device. When [PIN Code] appears, enter the PIN displayed on your mobile device in to the machine. Press [OK].
8. If your mobile device connects successfully, the machine's LCD displays [Connected]. You have completed the Wi-Fi Direct network setup.



### Related Information

- [Configure Your Wi-Fi Direct Network](#)

---

**Related Topics:**

- [Wi-Fi Direct Network Configuration Overview](#)
-

## Configure Your Wi-Fi Direct Network Manually

>> bizhub 4000i  
>> bizhub 5000i

### bizhub 4000i

If your mobile device does not support Wi-Fi Direct or WPS, you must configure a Wi-Fi Direct network manually.

1. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the [Network] option, and then press **OK**.
2. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the [Wi-Fi Direct] option, and then press **OK**.
3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the [Manual] option, and then press **OK**.
4. When [Wi-Fi Direct On?] appears, press ▲ to accept. To cancel, press ▼.
5. The machine will display the SSID name and Password for two minutes. Go to your mobile device's wireless network settings screen, select the SSID name, and then enter the password.
6. If your mobile device connects successfully, the machine's LCD displays [Connected]. You have completed the Wi-Fi Direct network setup.

### bizhub 5000i

If your mobile device does not support Wi-Fi Direct or WPS, you must configure a Wi-Fi Direct network manually.

1. Press  [Settings] > [Network] > [Wi-Fi Direct] > [Manual].
2. When [Wi-Fi Direct on?] appears, press [On] to accept. To cancel, press [Off].
3. The machine will display the SSID name and Password for two minutes. Go to your mobile device's wireless network settings screen, select the SSID name, and then enter the password.
4. If your mobile device connects successfully, the machine's LCD displays [Connected]. You have completed the Wi-Fi Direct network setup.



### Related Information

- [Configure Your Wi-Fi Direct Network](#)

#### Related Topics:

- [Wi-Fi Direct Network Configuration Overview](#)



## Advanced Network Features

- [Print the Network Configuration Report](#)
- [Print the WLAN Report](#)
- [Configure the SNTP Protocol Using Web Based Management](#)

## Print the Network Configuration Report

The Network Configuration Report lists the network configuration, including the network print server settings.



- **Node Name:** The Node Name appears on the current Network Configuration Report. The default Node Name is "KMNxxxxxxxxxxxx" for a wired network or "KMWxxxxxxxxxxxx" for a wireless network (where "xxxxxxxxxxxx" is your machine's MAC Address / Ethernet Address.)
- If the [IP Address] on the Network Configuration Report shows 0.0.0.0, wait for one minute and try printing it again.
- You can find your machine's settings, such as the IP address, subnet mask, node name, and MAC Address on the report, for example:
  - IP address: 192.168.0.5
  - Subnet mask: 255.255.255.0
  - Node name: KMN000ca0000499
  - MAC Address: 00-0c-a0-00-04-99

>> bizhub 4000i

>> bizhub 5000i

### bizhub 4000i

1. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the [Machine Info.] option, and then press **OK**.
2. Press ▲ or ▼ to select [Print NetSetting].
3. Press **OK**.

### bizhub 5000i

1. Press  [Settings] > [Machine Information] > [Print NetSetting].
2. Press [OK].
3. Press .

### ✓ Related Information

- [Advanced Network Features](#)

#### Related Topics:

- [Where Can I Find My Machine's Network Settings?](#)
- [I Want to Check that My Network Devices are Working Correctly](#)
- [Access Web Based Management](#)
- [Configure the Gigabit Ethernet Settings Using Web Based Management](#)

## Print the WLAN Report

The WLAN Report reflects your machine's wireless status. If the wireless connection fails, check the error code on the printed report.

>> [bizhub 4000i](#)

>> [bizhub 5000i](#)

### **bizhub 4000i**

1. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the [Machine Info.] option, and then press **OK**.
2. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the [Print WLANReport] option, and then press **OK**.

The machine will print the WLAN Report.

### **bizhub 5000i**

1. Press  [Settings] > [Machine Information] > [Print WLANReport].

2. Press [OK].

The machine will print the WLAN Report.

3. Press .

If the WLAN Report does not print, check your machine for errors. If there are no visible errors, wait for one minute and then try to print the report again.

### **Related Information**

- [Advanced Network Features](#)
  - [Wireless LAN Report Error Codes](#)

#### **Related Topics:**

- [My Machine Cannot Print over the Network](#)
- [I Want to Check that My Network Devices are Working Correctly](#)

## Wireless LAN Report Error Codes

If the Wireless LAN Report shows that the connection failed, check the error code on the printed report and see the corresponding instructions in the table:

| Error Code | Problem and Recommended Solutions                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
|------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| TS-01      | The wireless setting is not activated, change the wireless setting to ON.<br>If a network cable is connected to your machine, disconnect it and change the wireless setting of your machine to ON.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| TS-02      | <p>The wireless access point/router cannot be detected.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1. Check the following two points:<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Unplug the power to your wireless access point/router, wait for 10 seconds, and then plug it back in.</li><li>• If your WLAN access point/router is using MAC address filtering, confirm that the MAC address of this machine is allowed in the filter.</li></ul></li><li>2. If you manually entered the SSID and security information (SSID/authentication method/encryption method/Network Key), the information may be incorrect.<br/>Reconfirm the SSID and security information and re-enter the correct information as necessary.<br/>How to confirm wireless security information (SSID/authentication method/encryption method/Network Key)<ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>a. The Default security settings may be provided on a label attached to the WLAN access point/router. Or the manufacturer's name or model no. of the WLAN access point/router may be used as the default security settings.</li><li>b. See the documentation provided with your WLAN access point/router for information on how to find the security settings.</li></ol><ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• If WLAN access point/router is set to not broadcast the SSID, the SSID will not automatically be detected. You will have to manually enter the SSID name.</li><li>• The Network key may also be described as the Password, Security Key or Encryption Key.</li></ul><p>This device does not support a 5GHz SSID/ESSID and you must select a 2.4 GHz SSID/ESSID. Make sure the access point/router is set to 2.4 GHz or 2.4 GHz/5 GHz mixed mode.</p><p>If you do not know the SSID and wireless security settings of your WLAN access point/router or how to change the configuration, see the documentation provided with your WLAN access point/router, ask the manufacturer of your access point/router or ask to your Internet provider or network administrator.</p></li></ol> |
| TS-03      | <p>The wireless network and security setting you entered may be incorrect. Reconfirm the wireless network settings.</p> <p>If you do not know this information, ask your network administrator.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |

| Error Code | Problem and Recommended Solutions                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
|------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| TS-04      | <p>The Authentication/Encryption methods used by the selected wireless access point/router are not supported by your machine.</p> <p>For infrastructure mode, change the authentication and encryption methods of the wireless access point/router. Your machine supports the following authentication methods:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>WPA-Personal<br/>TKIP or AES</li> <li>WPA2-Personal<br/>AES</li> <li>Open<br/>WEP or None (without encryption)</li> <li>Shared key<br/>WEP</li> </ul> <p>If your problem is not solved, the SSID or network settings you entered may be incorrect. Confirm the wireless network settings.</p> <p>For Ad-Hoc Mode, change the authentication and encryption methods of your computer for the wireless setting. Your machine supports Open authentication only, with optional WEP encryption.</p> |
| TS-05      | <p>The security information (SSID/Network Key) is incorrect.</p> <p>Confirm the SSID and Network Key. If your router uses WEP encryption, enter the key used as the first WEP key. Your machine supports the use of the first WEP key only.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| TS-06      | <p>The wireless security information (Authentication method/Encryption method/Network Key) is incorrect.</p> <p>Confirm the wireless security information (Authentication method/Encryption method/Network Key) listed in TS-04. If your router uses WEP encryption, enter the key used as the first WEP key. Your machine supports the use of the first WEP key only.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| TS-07      | <p>The machine cannot detect a WLAN access point/router that has WPS enabled.</p> <p>If you would like to connect with WPS, you must operate both your machine and the WLAN access point/router. Confirm the connection method for WPS on WLAN access point/router and try starting again.</p> <p>If you do not know how to operate your WLAN access point/router using WPS, see the documentation provided with your WLAN access point/router, ask the manufacturer of your WLAN access point/router or ask your network administrator.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| TS-08      | <p>Two or more WLAN access points that have WPS enabled are detected.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Confirm that only one WLAN access point/router within range has the WPS method active and try again.</li> <li>Try starting again after few minutes in order to avoid effects from other access points.</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |



## Related Information

- [Print the WLAN Report](#)

### Related Topics:

- [My Machine Cannot Print over the Network](#)
- [I Want to Check that My Network Devices are Working Correctly](#)
- [Configure Your Machine for a Wireless Network Using the One Push Method of Wi-Fi Protected Setup™ \(WPS\)](#)
- [Configure Your Machine for a Wireless Network Using the PIN Method of Wi-Fi Protected Setup™ \(WPS\)](#)
- [Configure Your Machine for a Wireless Network in Ad-Hoc Mode Using an Existing SSID](#)
- [Configure Your Machine for a Wireless Network in Ad-Hoc Mode Using a New SSID](#)
- [Configure Your Machine for a Wireless Network Using the Machine's Control Panel Setup Wizard](#)
- [Configure Your Machine for a Wireless Network When the SSID Is Not Broadcast](#)
- [Configure Your Machine for an Enterprise Wireless Network](#)

## Configure the SNTP Protocol Using Web Based Management

Configure the SNTP protocol to synchronize the time the machine uses for authentication with the time kept by the SNTP time server.

1. Start your web browser.
2. Type "http://machine's IP address" in your browser's address bar (where "machine's IP address" is the machine's IP address).

For example:

http://192.168.1.2

3. Type a password if you have set one, and then click . The default password is initpass.
4. Click the **Network** tab.
5. Click **Protocol** in the left navigation bar.
6. Select the **SNTP** check box to activate the settings.
7. Next to the SNTP check box, click **Advanced Settings** and follow the instructions below:

SNTP

Status

Enabled

Synchronization Status

Succeeded

SNTP Server Method

AUTO

Primary SNTP Server Address

Primary SNTP Server Port

Secondary SNTP Server Address

Secondary SNTP Server Port

Synchronization Interval

hour(s)

Cancel

Submit

| Option                      | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
|-----------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Status                      | Displays whether the SNTP protocol is enabled or disabled.                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| Synchronization Status      | Confirm the latest synchronization status.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| SNTP Server Method          | Select <b>AUTO</b> or <b>STATIC</b> . <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• <b>AUTO</b><br/>If you have a DHCP server in your network, the SNTP server will obtain the address from that server automatically.</li><li>• <b>STATIC</b><br/>Type the address you want to use.</li></ul> |
| Primary SNTP Server Address | Type the server address (up to 64 characters).                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |

| Option                               | Description                                                                                                                                                                         |
|--------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Secondary SNTP Server Address</b> | The secondary SNTP server address is used as a backup to the primary SNTP server address. If the primary server is unavailable, the machine will contact the secondary SNTP server. |
| <b>Primary SNTP Server Port</b>      | Type the port number (1-65535).                                                                                                                                                     |
| <b>Secondary SNTP Server Port</b>    | The secondary SNTP server port is used as a backup to the primary SNTP server port. If the primary port is unavailable, the machine will contact the secondary SNTP port.           |
| <b>Synchronization Interval</b>      | Type the number of hours between server synchronization attempts (1-168 hours).                                                                                                     |

8. Click **Submit**.



## Related Information

- [Advanced Network Features](#)

## Technical Information for Advanced Users

- [Gigabit Ethernet \(Wired Network Only\)](#)
- [Reset the Network Settings to the Factory Settings](#)



## Gigabit Ethernet (Wired Network Only)

Your machine supports 1000BASE-T Gigabit Ethernet. To connect to a 1000BASE-T Gigabit Ethernet Network, you must set the machine's Ethernet link mode to Auto from the machine's control panel or Auto from Web Based Management (web browser).



- Use a straight-through Category 5 (or greater) twisted-pair cable for 10BASE-T, 100BASE-TX Fast Ethernet Network, or 1000BASE-T Gigabit Ethernet Network. When you connect the machine to a Gigabit Ethernet Network, use the network devices complying with 1000BASE-T.



### Related Information

- [Technical Information for Advanced Users](#)
  - [Configure the Gigabit Ethernet Settings Using Web Based Management](#)

## Configure the Gigabit Ethernet Settings Using Web Based Management

1. Start your web browser.
2. Type "http://machine's IP address" in your browser's address bar (where "machine's IP address" is the machine's IP address).  
For example:  
http://192.168.1.2
3. Type a password if you have set one, and then click . The default password is initpass.
4. Click the **Network** tab.
5. Click **Wired**.
6. Click **Ethernet** in the left navigation bar.
7. Select **Auto** from the **Ethernet Mode** drop-down list.
8. Click **Submit**.
9. To enable the settings, restart your machine.

You can confirm your settings by printing the Network Configuration Report.



### Related Information

- [Gigabit Ethernet \(Wired Network Only\)](#)

#### Related Topics:

- [Print the Network Configuration Report](#)
-

## Reset the Network Settings to the Factory Settings

You can use your machine's control panel to reset the print server to its default factory settings. This resets all information, such as the password and IP address.



- This feature restores all wired and wireless network settings to the factory settings.
- You can also reset the print server to its factory settings using Web Based Management.

>> [bizhub 4000i](#)

>> [bizhub 5000i](#)

### bizhub 4000i

1. Press **▲** or **▼** to select the [Network] option, and then press **OK**.
2. Press **▲** or **▼** to select the [Network Reset] option, and then press **OK**.
3. Press **▲** for [Yes].  
The machine will restart.

### bizhub 5000i

1. Press  [Settings] > [Network] > [Network Reset] > [Yes].
2. Press [Yes] for two seconds to confirm.  
The machine will restart.



### Related Information

- [Technical Information for Advanced Users](#)

## Security

- [Lock the Machine Settings](#)
- [Network Security Features](#)

## Lock the Machine Settings

Before turning on the machine's Access Lock, make a careful note of your password. If you forget the password, you must reset all passwords stored in the machine by contacting your administrator or customer support.

- [About Using Setting Lock](#)

## About Using Setting Lock

Use the Setting Lock feature to block unauthorised access to machine settings.

When Setting Lock is set to [On], you cannot access the machine settings without entering the password.

- [Set the Setting Lock Password](#)
- [Change the Setting Lock Password](#)
- [Turn Setting Lock On](#)

## Set the Setting Lock Password

>> bizhub 4000i

>> bizhub 5000i

### bizhub 4000i

1. Press ▲ or ▼ to display the [General Setup] option, and then press **OK**.
2. Press ▲ or ▼ to display the [Setting Lock] option, and then press **OK**.
3. Enter a four-digit number for the password.  
To enter each digit, press ▲ or ▼ to select a number, and then press **OK**.
4. When the LCD displays [Verify], re-enter the new password.
5. Press **Go**.

### bizhub 5000i

1. Press  [Settings] > [General Setup] > [Setting Lock].
2. Enter a four-digit number for the password.
3. Press [OK].
4. When the LCD displays [Verify], re-enter the new password.
5. Press [OK].
6. Press .



### Related Information

- [About Using Setting Lock](#)

## Change the Setting Lock Password

>> [bizhub 4000i](#)

>> [bizhub 5000i](#)

### **bizhub 4000i**

1. Press ▲ or ▼ to display the [General Setup] option, and then press **OK**.
2. Press ▲ or ▼ to display the [Setting Lock] option, and then press **OK**.
3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the [Set Password] option, and then press **OK**.
4. Enter the current four-digit password.  
To enter each digit, press ▲ or ▼ to select a number, and then press **OK**.
5. Enter a new four-digit password.  
To enter each digit, press ▲ or ▼ to select a number, and then press **OK**.
6. When the LCD displays [Verify], re-enter the new password.
7. Press **Go**.

### **bizhub 5000i**

1. Press  [Settings] > [General Setup] > [Setting Lock] > [Set Password].
2. Enter the current four-digit password.
3. Press [OK].
4. Enter a new four-digit password.
5. Press [OK].
6. When the LCD displays [Verify], re-enter the new password.
7. Press [OK].
8. Press .



### **Related Information**

- [About Using Setting Lock](#)



## Turn Setting Lock On

>> bizhub 4000i

>> bizhub 5000i

### bizhub 4000i

1. Press ▲ or ▼ to display the [General Setup] option, and then press **OK**.
2. Press ▲ or ▼ to display the [Setting Lock] option, and then press **OK**.
3. Press **OK** when the LCD displays [On].
4. Enter the current four-digit password.

To enter each digit, press ▲ or ▼ to select a number, and then press **OK**.



To turn Setting Lock [Off], press **OK**. Press ▲ to select [Yes] when the LCD displays [Unlock?], enter the current four-digit password, and then press **OK**.

### bizhub 5000i

1. Press [Settings] > [General Setup] > [Setting Lock] > [Lock Off⇒On].
2. Enter the current four-digit password.
3. Press [OK].



To turn Setting Lock [Off], press on the LCD, enter the current four-digit password, and then press [OK].



### Related Information

- [About Using Setting Lock](#)

## Network Security Features

- [Before Using Network Security Features](#)
- [Secure Function Lock 3.0](#)
- [Use Active Directory Authentication](#)
- [Use LDAP Authentication](#)
- [Manage Your Network Machine Securely Using SSL/TLS](#)
- [Manage Your Network Machine Securely Using IPsec](#)
- [Send an Email Securely](#)
- [Use IEEE 802.1x Authentication for a Wired or a Wireless Network](#)
- [Store Print Log to Network](#)

## Before Using Network Security Features

Your machine employs some of the latest network security and encryption protocols available today. These network features can be integrated into your overall network security plan to help protect your data and prevent unauthorised access to the machine.



We recommend disabling the Telnet, FTP server and TFTP protocols. Accessing the machine using these protocols is not secure.



### Related Information

- [Network Security Features](#)

## Secure Function Lock 3.0

Secure Function Lock 3.0 increases security by restricting the functions available on your machine.

- [Before Using Secure Function Lock 3.0](#)
- [Configure Secure Function Lock 3.0 Using Web Based Management](#)
- [Configure Public Mode for Secure Function Lock 3.0](#)
- [Additional Secure Function Lock 3.0 Features](#)
- [Register a new ID Card Using Machine's Control Panel](#)

## Before Using Secure Function Lock 3.0

Use Secure Function Lock to configure passwords, set specific user page limits, and grant access to some or all of the functions listed here.

You can configure and change the following Secure Function Lock 3.0 settings using Web Based Management:

- **Print**

Print includes print jobs sent via Google Cloud Print™ and iPrint&Scan for Mac.

If you register users' login names in advance, the users will not need to enter their passwords when they use the print function.

- **Page Limits**

- **Page Counters**

- **Card ID** (supported models only)

If you register users' Card IDs in advance, a registered user can activate the machine by touching his registered card to the machine's ID card logo.



### Related Information

- [Secure Function Lock 3.0](#)
-

## Configure Secure Function Lock 3.0 Using Web Based Management

1. Start your web browser.
2. Type "http://machine's IP address" in your browser's address bar (where "machine's IP address" is the machine's IP address).  
For example:  
http://192.168.1.2
3. Click the **Administrator** tab.
4. Click the **User Restriction Function** menu in the left navigation bar.
5. Select **Secure Function Lock**.
6. Click **Submit**.
7. Click the **Restricted Functions** menu in the left navigation bar.
8. In the **User List / Restricted Functions** field, type a group name or user name (alphanumeric, up to 15 digits).
9. In the **Print** and the other columns, select a check box to allow or clear a check box to restrict the function listed.
10. To configure the maximum page count, select the **On** check box in the **Page Limits** column, and then type the maximum number in the **Max. Pages** field.
11. Click **Submit**.
12. Click the **User List** menu in the left navigation bar.
13. In the **User List** field, type the user name.
14. In the **PIN Number** field, type a four-digit password.
15. To register the user's Card ID, type the card number in the **Card ID** field (Available only for bizhub 5000i).
16. Click the **Output** drop-down list, and then select the output tray for each user (Available only for bizhub 5000i).
17. Select **User List / Restricted Functions** from the drop-down list for each user.
18. Click **Submit**.



### Related Information

- [Secure Function Lock 3.0](#)

## Configure Public Mode for Secure Function Lock 3.0

Use the Secure Function Lock screen to set up Public Mode, which limits the functions available to public users. Public users will not need to enter a password to access the features made available through Public Mode settings.



Public Mode includes print jobs sent via Google Cloud Print™ and iPrint&Scan for Mac.

1. Start your web browser.
2. Type "http://machine's IP address" in your browser's address bar (where "machine's IP address" is the machine's IP address).  
For example:  
http://192.168.1.2
3. Click the **Administrator** tab.
4. Click the **User Restriction Function** menu in the left navigation bar.
5. Select **Secure Function Lock**.
6. Click **Submit**.
7. Click the **Restricted Functions** menu.
8. In the **Public Mode** row, select a check box to allow or clear a check box to restrict the function listed.
9. Click **Submit**.



### Related Information

- [Secure Function Lock 3.0](#)

## Additional Secure Function Lock 3.0 Features

Configure the following features in the Secure Function Lock screen:

### All Counter Reset

Click **All Counter Reset**, in the **Page Counters** column, to reset the page counter.

### Export to CSV file

Click **Export to CSV file**, to export the current page counter including **User List / Restricted Functions** information as a CSV file.

### Card ID (supported models only)

Click the **User List** menu, and then type a users' Card ID in the **Card ID** field. You can use your ID card for authentication.

### Last Counter Record

Click **Last Counter Record** if you want the machine to retain the page count after the counter has been reset.



### Related Information

- [Secure Function Lock 3.0](#)



## Register a new ID Card Using Machine's Control Panel

**Related Models:** bizhub 5000i

1. Touch the ID card logo on the machine's control panel with a registered ID Card.
2. Press [Register Card].
3. Touch a new ID Card to the ID card logo.

The new ID Card's number is registered to the machine.



For the supported ID Card types, see the following.

MIFARE Standard(Classic), MIFARE Plus, MIFARE UltraLight, MIFARE UltraLight C, MIFARE DESfire, my-d move, Tag-it, FeliCa, FeliCa Lite, FeliCa Lite-S



### Related Information

- [Secure Function Lock 3.0](#)

## **Use Active Directory Authentication**

- [Introduction to Active Directory Authentication](#)
- [Configure Active Directory Authentication Using Web Based Management](#)
- [Log On to Change the Machine Settings Using the Machine's Control Panel \(Active Directory Authentication\)](#)

## Introduction to Active Directory Authentication

**Related Models:** bizhub 5000i

Active Directory Authentication restricts the use of your machine. If Active Directory Authentication is enabled, the machine's control panel will be locked. You cannot change the machine's settings until you enter a User ID and password.

Active Directory Authentication offers the following feature:

- Stores incoming print data

You can change the Active Directory Authentication settings using Web Based Management.



### Related Information

- [Use Active Directory Authentication](#)

## Configure Active Directory Authentication Using Web Based Management

**Related Models:** bizhub 5000i

Active Directory authentication supports Kerberos authentication and NTLMv2 authentication. You must configure the SNTP protocol (network time server) and DNS server configuration for authentication.

1. Start your web browser.
2. Type "http://machine's IP address" in your browser's address bar (where "machine's IP address" is the machine's IP address).  
For example:  
http://192.168.1.2
3. Click the **Administrator** tab.
4. Click the **User Restriction Function** menu in the left navigation bar.
5. Select **Active Directory Authentication**.
6. Click **Submit**.
7. Select **Active Directory Authentication** in the left navigation bar.
8. Configure the following settings:

| Option                                      | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
|---------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Storage PC Print Data</b>                | Select this option to store incoming print data. After you log on to the machine, your PC print jobs will be printed automatically. This feature is available only for print data created by your printer driver. |
| <b>Remember User ID</b>                     | Select this option to save your User ID.                                                                                                                                                                          |
| <b>Active Directory Server Address</b>      | Type the IP address or the server name (for example: ad.example.com) of the Active Directory Server.                                                                                                              |
| <b>Active Directory Domain Name</b>         | Type the Active Directory domain name.                                                                                                                                                                            |
| <b>Protocol &amp; Authentication Method</b> | Select the protocol and authentication method.                                                                                                                                                                    |
| <b>LDAP Server Port</b>                     | Type the LDAP server port number (available only for <b>LDAP + kerberos</b> authentication method).                                                                                                               |

9. Click **Submit**.



### Related Information

- [Use Active Directory Authentication](#)

## Log On to Change the Machine Settings Using the Machine's Control Panel (Active Directory Authentication)

**Related Models:** bizhub 5000i

When Active Directory Authentication is enabled, the machine's control panel will be locked until you enter your User ID and password on the machine's control panel.

1. On the machine's control panel, enter your User ID.
2. Press [Login].
3. Enter your password.
4. Press [OK].
5. When authentication is successful, the machine's control panel will be unlocked.



### Related Information

- [Use Active Directory Authentication](#)

## Use LDAP Authentication

- [Introduction to LDAP Authentication](#)
- [Configure LDAP Authentication Using Web Based Management](#)
- [Log On to Change the Machine Settings Using the Machine's Control Panel \(LDAP Authentication\)](#)

## Introduction to LDAP Authentication

**Related Models:** bizhub 5000i

LDAP Authentication restricts the use of your machine. If LDAP Authentication is enabled, the machine's control panel will be locked. You cannot change the machine's settings until you enter a User ID and password.

LDAP Authentication offers the following feature:

- Stores incoming print data

You can change the LDAP Authentication settings using Web Based Management.



### Related Information

- [Use LDAP Authentication](#)

## Configure LDAP Authentication Using Web Based Management

**Related Models:** bizhub 5000i

1. Start your web browser.
2. Type "http://machine's IP address" in your browser's address bar (where "machine's IP address" is the machine's IP address).  
For example:  
http://192.168.1.2
3. Click the **Administrator** tab.
4. Click the **User Restriction Function** menu in the left navigation bar.
5. Select **LDAP Authentication**.
6. Click **Submit**.
7. Click **LDAP Authentication** in the left navigation bar.
8. Configure the following settings:

| Option                       | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
|------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Storage PC Print Data</b> | Select this option to store incoming print data. After you log on to the machine, your PC print jobs will be printed automatically. This feature is available only for print data created by your printer driver. |
| <b>Remember User ID</b>      | Select this option to save your User ID.                                                                                                                                                                          |
| <b>LDAP Server Address</b>   | Type the IP address or the server name (for example: ad.example.com) of the LDAP server.                                                                                                                          |
| <b>LDAP Server Port</b>      | Type the LDAP server port number.                                                                                                                                                                                 |

9. Click **Submit**.



### Related Information

- [Use LDAP Authentication](#)



## Log On to Change the Machine Settings Using the Machine's Control Panel (LDAP Authentication)

**Related Models:** bizhub 5000i

When LDAP Authentication is enabled, the machine's control panel will be locked until you enter your User ID and password on the machine's control panel.

1. On the machine's control panel, enter your User ID and Password.
2. Press [Login].
3. When authentication is successful, the machine's control panel will be unlocked.



### Related Information

- [Use LDAP Authentication](#)

## Manage Your Network Machine Securely Using SSL/TLS

- [Introduction to SSL/TLS](#)
- [Certificates and Web Based Management](#)
- [Manage Your Network Machine Securely Using Web Based Management](#)
- [Print Documents Securely Using SSL/TLS](#)

## Introduction to SSL/TLS

Secure Socket Layer (SSL) or Transport Layer Security (TLS) is an effective method of protecting data sent over a local or wide area network (LAN or WAN). It works by encrypting data, such as a print job, sent over a network, so anyone trying to capture it will not be able to read it.

SSL/TLS can be configured on both wired and wireless networks and will work with other forms of security such as WPA keys and firewalls.



### Related Information

- [Manage Your Network Machine Securely Using SSL/TLS](#)
    - [Brief History of SSL/TLS](#)
    - [Benefits of Using SSL/TLS](#)
-

## Brief History of SSL/TLS

SSL/TLS was originally created to secure web traffic information, particularly data sent between web browsers and servers. For example, when you use Internet Explorer for Internet Banking and you see https:// and the little padlock icon in the web browser, you are using SSL. SSL grew to work with additional applications, such as Telnet, printer, and FTP software, in order to become a universal solution for online security. Its original design intentions are still being used today by many online retailers and banks to secure sensitive data, such as credit card numbers, customer records, etc.

SSL/TLS uses extremely high levels of encryption and is trusted by banks all over the world.



### Related Information

- [Introduction to SSL/TLS](#)
-

## Benefits of Using SSL/TLS

The primary benefit of using SSL/TLS on your machines is to guarantee secure printing over an IP network by restricting unauthorised users from reading data sent to the machine. SSL's key selling point is that it can be used to print confidential data securely. For example, an HR department in a large company may be printing wage slips on a regular basis. Without encryption, the data contained on these wages slips can be read by other network users. However, with SSL/TLS, anyone trying to capture the data will see a confusing page of code and not the actual wage slip.



### Related Information

- [Introduction to SSL/TLS](#)
-

## Certificates and Web Based Management

You must configure a certificate to manage your machine securely using SSL/TLS. You must use Web Based Management to configure a certificate.

- [Supported Security Certificate Features](#)
- [Create and Install a Certificate](#)
- [Manage Multiple Certificates](#)

## Supported Security Certificate Features

Your machine supports the use of multiple security certificates, which allows secure management, authentication, and communication with the machine. The following security certificate features can be used with the machine:

- SSL/TLS communication
- SSL communication for SMTP
- IEEE 802.1x authentication
- IPsec

This machine supports the following:

- Pre-installed certificate

Your machine has a pre-installed self-signed certificate. This certificate enables you to use SSL/TLS communication without creating or installing a different certificate.



The pre-installed self-signed certificate cannot protect your communication from being compromised. We recommend using a certificate that is issued by a trusted organization for better security.

- Self-signed certificate

This print server issues its own certificate. Using this certificate, you can easily use the SSL/TLS communication without creating or installing a different certificate from a CA.

- Certificate from a Certificate Authority (CA)

There are two methods for installing a certificate from a CA. If you already have a certificate from a CA or if you want to use a certificate from an external trusted CA:

- When using a Certificates Signing Request (CSR) from this print server.
- When importing a certificate and a private key.

- Certificate Authority (CA) Certificate

To use a CA certificate that identifies the CA and owns its private key, you must import that CA certificate from the CA before configuring the security features of the Network.



- If you are going to use SSL/TLS communication, we recommend contacting your system administrator first.
- When you reset the print server back to its default factory settings, the certificate and the private key that are installed will be deleted. If you want to keep the same certificate and the private key after resetting the print server, export them before resetting, and then reinstall them.



### Related Information

- [Certificates and Web Based Management](#)

## **Create and Install a Certificate**

- [Step by Step Guide for Creating and Installing a Certificate](#)
- [Create and Install a Self-signed Certificate](#)
- [Create and Install a Certificate from a Certificate Authority \(CA\)](#)
- [Import and Export a CA Certificate](#)



## Step by Step Guide for Creating and Installing a Certificate

There are two options when choosing a security certificate: use a self-signed certificate or use a certificate from a Certificate Authority (CA).

These are a brief summary of the actions required, based on the option you choose.

### Option 1

#### Self-Signed Certificate

1. Create a self-signed certificate using Web Based Management.
2. Install the self-signed certificate on your computer.

### Option 2

#### Certificate from a CA

1. Create a Certificate Signing Request (CSR) using Web Based Management.
2. Install the certificate issued by the CA on your machine using Web Based Management.
3. Install the certificate on your computer.



#### Related Information

- [Create and Install a Certificate](#)

## Create and Install a Self-signed Certificate

- [Create a Self-signed Certificate](#)
- [Install the Self-signed Certificate for Windows users with Administrator Rights](#)
- [Import and Export the Self-signed Certificate on your Machine](#)

## Create a Self-signed Certificate

1. Start your web browser.
2. Type "http://machine's IP address" in your browser's address bar (where "machine's IP address" is the machine's IP address).

For example:

http://192.168.1.2



- If you are using a Domain Name System or enable a NetBIOS name, you can type another name, such as "SharedPrinter" instead of the IP address.

- For example:

http://SharedPrinter

If you enable a NetBIOS name, you can also use the node name.

- For example:

http://KMNxxxxxxxxxxxx

The NetBIOS name can be found in the Network Configuration Report.

3. Type a password if you have set one, and then click . The default password is initpass.
4. Click the **Network** tab.
5. Click **Security**.
6. Click **Certificate**.
7. Click **Create Self-Signed Certificate**.
8. Enter a **Common Name** and a **Valid Date**.
  - The length of the **Common Name** is less than 64 bytes. Enter an identifier, such as an IP address, node name, or domain name to use when accessing this machine through SSL/TLS communication. The node name is displayed by default.
  - A warning will appear if you use the IPPS or HTTPS protocol and enter a different name in the URL than the **Common Name** that was used for the self-signed certificate.
9. Select your setting from the **Public Key Algorithm** drop-down list. The default setting is **RSA(2048bit)**.
10. Select your setting from the **Digest Algorithm** drop-down list. The default setting is **SHA256**.
11. Click **Submit**.
12. Click **Network**.
13. Click **Protocol**.
14. Click **HTTP Server Settings**.
15. Select the certificate you want to configure from the **Select the Certificate** drop-down list.
16. Click **Submit**.

The following screen appears.

## HTTP Server Settings

The setting for high security in communication was done.

To activate your new settings, this Device needs to restart.

Note: Any jobs in progress will be aborted.

To activate other protocols that have secure settings after restarting, check the box below.

☒ Activate other protocols that have secure settings.

Would you like to restart immediately?

17. Click **Yes** to restart your print server.

The self-signed certificate is created and saved in your machine's memory.

To use SSL/TLS communication, the self-signed certificate must be installed on your computer.



### Related Information

- [Create and Install a Self-signed Certificate](#)

## Install the Self-signed Certificate for Windows users with Administrator Rights

The following steps are for Microsoft Internet Explorer. If you use another web browser, consult the documentation for your web browser to get help with installing certificates.

1. Do one of the following:

- (Windows 7 and Windows Server 2008)

Click  (**Start**) > **All Programs**.

- (Windows 8.1 and Windows Server 2019)

Right-click the  (**Internet Explorer**) icon on the taskbar.

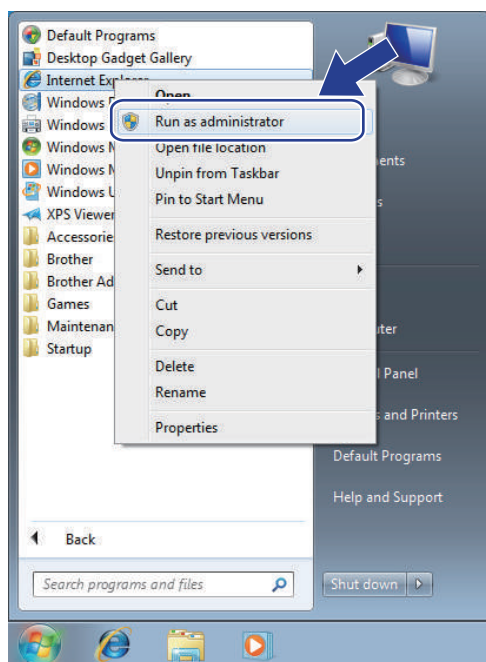
- (Windows 10 and Windows Server 2016)

Click  > **Windows Accessories**.

- (Windows Server 2012 and Windows Server 2012 R2)

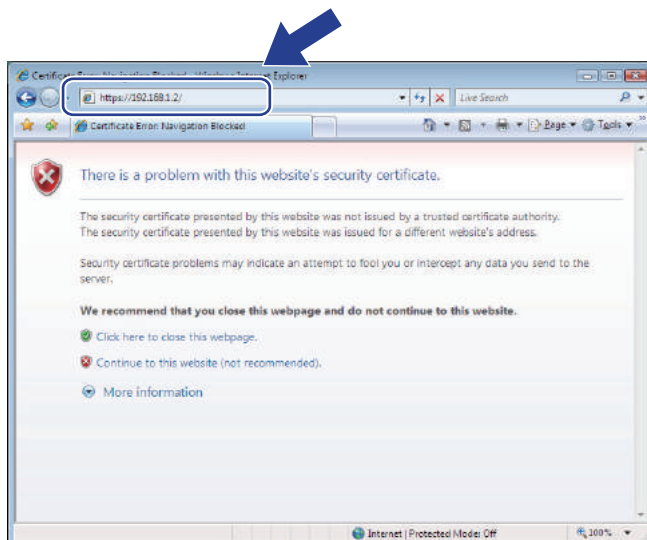
Click  (**Internet Explorer**), and then right-click the  (**Internet Explorer**) icon that appears on the taskbar.

2. Right-click **Internet Explorer**, and then click **Run as administrator**.

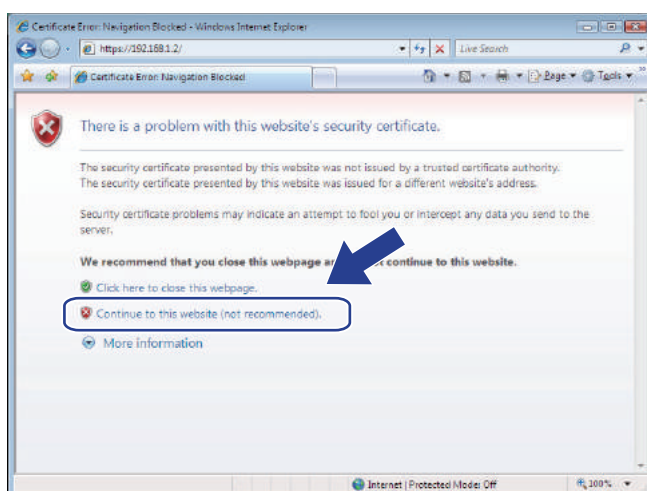


If the **User Account Control** screen appears, click **Yes**.

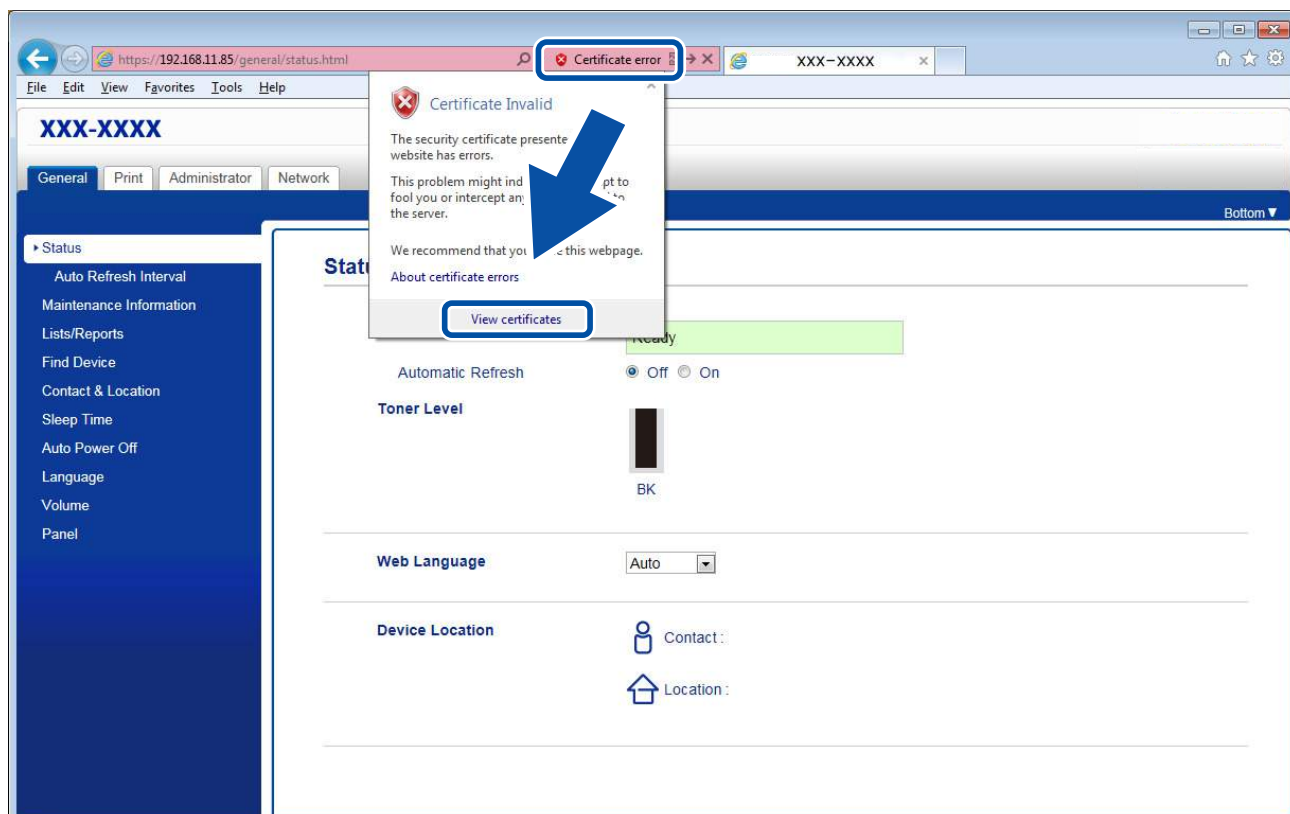
3. Type "https://machine's IP address/" in your browser's address bar to access your machine (where "machine's IP address" is the machine's IP address or the node name that you assigned for the certificate).



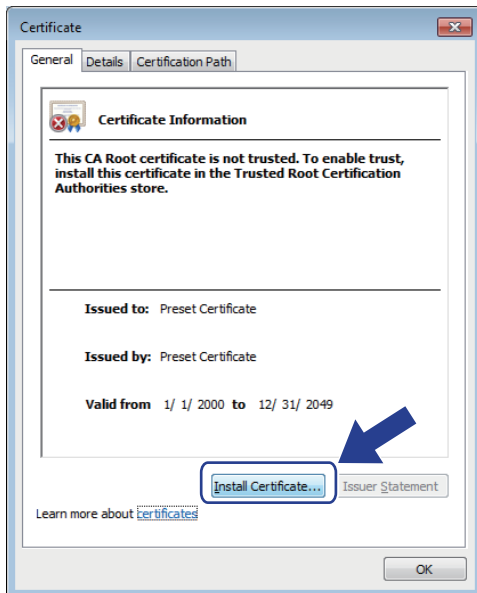
4. Click **Continue to this website (not recommended)**.



5. Click **Certificate Error**, and then click **View certificates**.

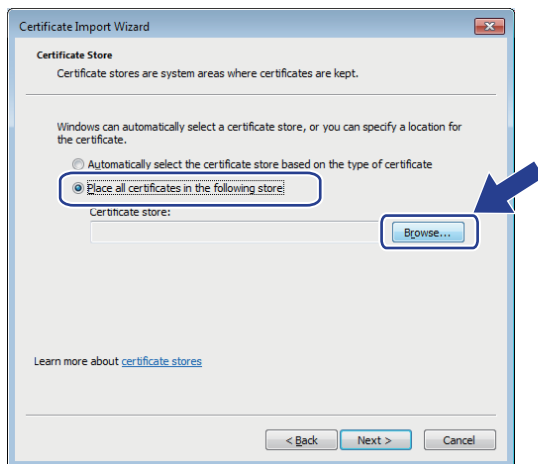


6. Click **Install Certificate...**

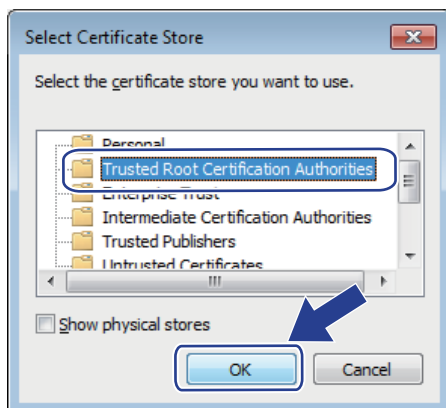


7. When the **Certificate Import Wizard** appears, click **Next**.

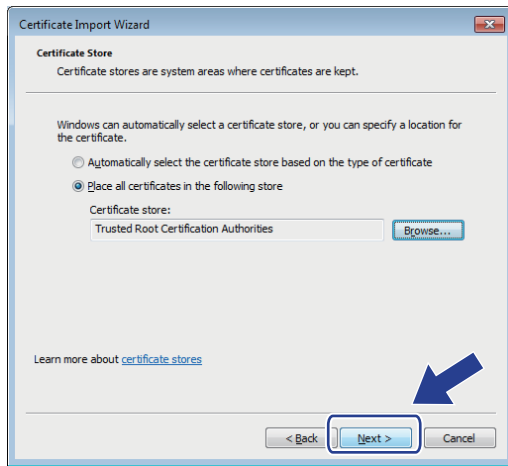
8. Select **Place all certificates in the following store**, and then click **Browse...**.



9. Select **Trusted Root Certification Authorities**, and then click **OK**.

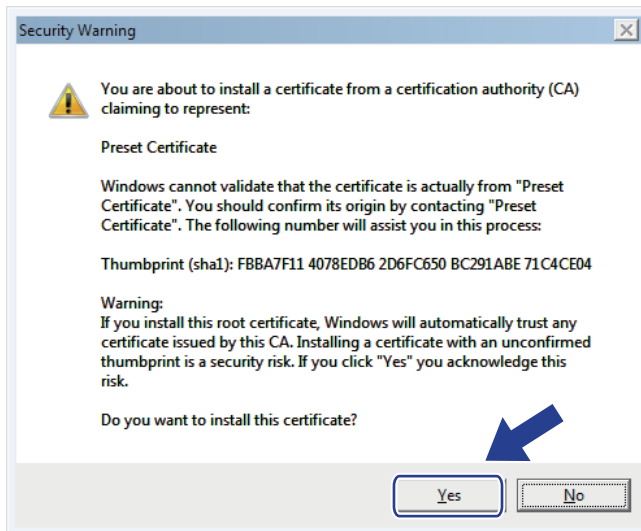


10. Click **Next**.



11. Click **Finish**.

12. Click **Yes**, if the fingerprint (thumbprint) is correct.



The fingerprint (thumbprint) is printed on the Network Configuration Report.

13. Click **OK**.

The self-signed certificate is now installed on your computer, and SSL/TLS communication is available.



## Related Information

- [Create and Install a Self-signed Certificate](#)



## **Import and Export the Self-signed Certificate on your Machine**

You can store the self-signed certificates on your machine and manage them by importing and exporting.

- [Import the Self-signed Certificate](#)
- [Export the Self-signed Certificate](#)

## Import the Self-signed Certificate

1. Start your web browser.
2. Type "http://machine's IP address" in your browser's address bar (where "machine's IP address" is the machine's IP address).

For example:

http://192.168.1.2



- If you are using a Domain Name System or enable a NetBIOS name, you can type another name, such as "SharedPrinter" instead of the IP address.

- For example:

http://SharedPrinter

If you enable a NetBIOS name, you can also use the node name.

- For example:

http://KMNxxxxxxxxxxxx

The NetBIOS name can be found in the Network Configuration Report.

3. Type a password if you have set one, and then click . The default password is initpass.
4. Click the **Network** tab.
5. Click **Security**.
6. Click **Certificate**.
7. Click **Import Certificate and Private Key**.
8. Browse to the file you want to import.
9. Type the password if the file is encrypted, and then click **Submit**.

The self-signed certificate is imported to your machine.

To use SSL/TLS communication, the self-signed certificate must also be installed on your computer. Contact your network administrator.



### Related Information

- [Import and Export the Self-signed Certificate on your Machine](#)

## Export the Self-signed Certificate

1. Start your web browser.
2. Type "http://machine's IP address" in your browser's address bar (where "machine's IP address" is the machine's IP address).

For example:

http://192.168.1.2



- If you are using a Domain Name System or enable a NetBIOS name, you can type another name, such as "SharedPrinter" instead of the IP address.

- For example:

http://SharedPrinter

If you enable a NetBIOS name, you can also use the node name.

- For example:

http://KMNxxxxxxxxxxxx

The NetBIOS name can be found in the Network Configuration Report.

3. Type a password if you have set one, and then click . The default password is initpass.
4. Click the **Network** tab.
5. Click **Security**.
6. Click **Certificate**.
7. Click **Export**.
8. If you want to encrypt the file, type a password in the **Enter password** field.  
If the **Enter password** field is blank, your output file will not be encrypted.
9. Type the password again in the **Retype password** field, and then click **Submit**.
10. Specify the location where you want to save the file.

The self-signed certificate is exported to your computer.

You can also import the self-signed certificate to your computer.



### Related Information

- [Import and Export the Self-signed Certificate on your Machine](#)

## Create and Install a Certificate from a Certificate Authority (CA)

If you already have a certificate from an external trusted CA, you can store the certificate and private key on the machine and manage them by importing and exporting. If you do not have a certificate from an external trusted CA, create a Certificate Signing Request (CSR), send it to a CA for authentication, and install the returned certificate on your machine.

- [Create a Certificate Signing Request \(CSR\)](#)
- [Install a Certificate on Your Machine](#)
- [Import and Export the Certificate and Private Key](#)

## Create a Certificate Signing Request (CSR)

A Certificate Signing Request (CSR) is a request sent to a Certificate Authority (CA) to authenticate the credentials contained within the certificate.

We recommend installing a Root Certificate from the CA on your computer before creating the CSR.

1. Start your web browser.
2. Type "http://machine's IP address" in your browser's address bar (where "machine's IP address" is the machine's IP address).

For example:

http://192.168.1.2



- If you are using a Domain Name System or enable a NetBIOS name, you can type another name, such as "SharedPrinter" instead of the IP address.

- For example:

http://SharedPrinter

If you enable a NetBIOS name, you can also use the node name.

- For example:

http://KMNxxxxxxxxxxxx

The NetBIOS name can be found in the Network Configuration Report.

3. Type a password if you have set one, and then click . The default password is initpass.
4. Click the **Network** tab.
5. Click **Security**.
6. Click **Certificate**.
7. Click **Create CSR**.
8. Type a **Common Name** (required) and add other information about your **Organization** (optional).



- Your company details are required so that a CA can confirm your identity and verify it to the outside world.
- The length of the **Common Name** must be less than 64 bytes. Enter an identifier, such as an IP address, node name, or domain name to use when accessing this printer through SSL/TLS communication. The node name is displayed by default. The **Common Name** is required.
- A warning will appear if you type a different name in the URL than the Common Name that was used for the certificate.
- The length of the **Organization**, the **Organization Unit**, the **City/Locality** and the **State/Province** must be less than 64 bytes.
- The **Country/Region** should be a two character ISO 3166 country code.
- If you are configuring an X.509v3 certificate extension, select the **Configure extended partition** check box, and then select **Auto (Register IPv4)** or **Manual**.

9. Select your setting from the **Public Key Algorithm** drop-down list. The default setting is **RSA(2048bit)**.
10. Select your setting from the **Digest Algorithm** drop-down list. The default setting is **SHA256**.
11. Click **Submit**.

The CSR appears on your screen. Save the CSR as a file or copy and paste it into an online CSR form offered by a Certificate Authority.

12. Click **Save**.



- Follow your CA's policy regarding the method to send a CSR to your CA.
  - If you are using the Enterprise root CA of Windows Server 2008/2012/2012 R2/2016/2019, we recommend using the Web Server for the certificate template to securely create the Client Certificate. If you are creating a Client Certificate for an IEEE 802.1x environment with EAP-TLS authentication, we recommend using User for the certificate template.
- 



### **Related Information**

- [Create and Install a Certificate from a Certificate Authority \(CA\)](#)
-

## Install a Certificate on Your Machine

When you receive a certificate from a CA, follow the steps below to install it into the print server:

Only a certificate issued with your machine's CSR can be installed onto the machine. When you want to create another CSR, make sure that the certificate is installed before creating another CSR. Create another CSR only after installing the certificate on the machine. If you do not, the CSR you create before installing will be invalid.

1. Start your web browser.
2. Type "http://machine's IP address" in your browser's address bar (where "machine's IP address" is the machine's IP address).

For example:

http://192.168.1.2



- If you are using a Domain Name System or enable a NetBIOS name, you can type another name, such as "SharedPrinter" instead of the IP address.

- For example:

http://SharedPrinter

If you enable a NetBIOS name, you can also use the node name.

- For example:

http://KMNxxxxxxxxxxxx

The NetBIOS name can be found in the Network Configuration Report.

3. Type a password if you have set one, and then click . The default password is initpass.
4. Click the **Network** tab.
5. Click **Security**.
6. Click **Certificate**.
7. Click **Install Certificate**.
8. Browse to the file that contains the certificate issued by the CA, and then click **Submit**.

The certificate has been created successfully and saved in your machine's memory successfully.

To use SSL/TLS communication, the Root Certificate from the CA must be installed on your computer. Contact your network administrator.



### Related Information

- [Create and Install a Certificate from a Certificate Authority \(CA\)](#)

## **Import and Export the Certificate and Private Key**

Store the certificate and private key on your machine and manage them by importing and exporting them.

- [Import a Certificate and Private Key](#)
- [Export the Certificate and Private Key](#)



## Import a Certificate and Private Key

1. Start your web browser.
2. Type "http://machine's IP address" in your browser's address bar (where "machine's IP address" is the machine's IP address).

For example:

http://192.168.1.2



- If you are using a Domain Name System or enable a NetBIOS name, you can type another name, such as "SharedPrinter" instead of the IP address.

- For example:

http://SharedPrinter

If you enable a NetBIOS name, you can also use the node name.

- For example:

http://KMNxxxxxxxxxxxx

The NetBIOS name can be found in the Network Configuration Report.

3. Type a password if you have set one, and then click . The default password is initpass.
4. Click the **Network** tab.
5. Click **Security**.
6. Click **Certificate**.
7. Click **Import Certificate and Private Key**.
8. Browse to the file you want to import.
9. Type the password if the file is encrypted, and then click **Submit**.

The certificate and private key are imported to your machine.

To use SSL/TLS communication, the Root Certificate from the CA must also be installed on your computer. Contact your network administrator.



### Related Information

- [Import and Export the Certificate and Private Key](#)

## Export the Certificate and Private Key

1. Start your web browser.
2. Type "http://machine's IP address" in your browser's address bar (where "machine's IP address" is the machine's IP address).

For example:

http://192.168.1.2



- If you are using a Domain Name System or enable a NetBIOS name, you can type another name, such as "SharedPrinter" instead of the IP address.

- For example:

http://SharedPrinter

If you enable a NetBIOS name, you can also use the node name.

- For example:

http://KMNxxxxxxxxxxxx

The NetBIOS name can be found in the Network Configuration Report.

3. Type a password if you have set one, and then click . The default password is initpass.
4. Click the **Network** tab.
5. Click **Security**.
6. Click **Certificate**.
7. Click **Export** shown with **Certificate List**.
8. Enter the password if you want to encrypt the file.  
If a blank password is used, the output is not encrypted.
9. Enter the password again for confirmation, and then click **Submit**.
10. Specify the location where you want to save the file.

The certificate and private key are exported to your computer.

You can also import the certificate to your computer.



### Related Information

- [Import and Export the Certificate and Private Key](#)

## **Import and Export a CA Certificate**

You can import, export and store CA certificates on your machine.

- [Import a CA Certificate](#)
- [Export a CA Certificate](#)

## Import a CA Certificate

1. Start your web browser.
2. Type "http://machine's IP address" in your browser's address bar (where "machine's IP address" is the machine's IP address).

For example:

http://192.168.1.2



- If you are using a Domain Name System or enable a NetBIOS name, you can type another name, such as "SharedPrinter" instead of the IP address.

- For example:

http://SharedPrinter

If you enable a NetBIOS name, you can also use the node name.

- For example:

http://KMNxxxxxxxxxxxx

The NetBIOS name can be found in the Network Configuration Report.

3. Type a password if you have set one, and then click . The default password is initpass.
4. Click the **Network** tab.
5. Click **Security**.
6. Click **CA Certificate**.
7. Click **Import CA Certificate** and select the certificate.
8. Click **Submit**.



### Related Information

- [Import and Export a CA Certificate](#)

## Export a CA Certificate

1. Start your web browser.
2. Type "http://machine's IP address" in your browser's address bar (where "machine's IP address" is the machine's IP address).

For example:

http://192.168.1.2



- If you are using a Domain Name System or enable a NetBIOS name, you can type another name, such as "SharedPrinter" instead of the IP address.

- For example:

http://SharedPrinter

If you enable a NetBIOS name, you can also use the node name.

- For example:

http://KMNxxxxxxxxxxxx

The NetBIOS name can be found in the Network Configuration Report.

3. Type a password if you have set one, and then click . The default password is initpass.
4. Click the **Network** tab.
5. Click **Security**.
6. Click **CA Certificate**.
7. Select the certificate you want to export and click **Export**.
8. Click **Submit**.
9. Click **Save**.
10. Specify where on your computer you want to save the exported certificate, and save it.



### Related Information

- [Import and Export a CA Certificate](#)

## Manage Multiple Certificates

The multiple certificate feature allows you to use Web Based Management to manage each certificate installed on your machine. In Web Based Management, navigate to the **Certificate** or **CA Certificate** screen to view certificate content, delete, or export your certificates.

|                                                       | Maximum Number of Certificates Stored UP on This Machine |
|-------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------|
| Self-signed Certificate or Certificate Issued by a CA | 5                                                        |
| CA Certificate                                        | 6                                                        |

We recommend storing one less certificate than allowed, reserving an empty spot in case of certificate expiration. When a certificate expires, import a new certificate into the reserved spot, and then delete the expired certificate. This ensures that you avoid configuration failure.



- When you use HTTPS/IPPS, or IEEE 802.1x, you must select which certificate you are using.
- When you use SSL for SMTP communications, you do not have to choose the certificate. The necessary certificate will be chosen automatically.



### Related Information

- [Certificates and Web Based Management](#)

## Manage Your Network Machine Securely Using Web Based Management

To manage your network machine securely, you must use management utilities with security protocols.

We recommend using the HTTPS protocol for secure management. To use this protocol, HTTPS must be enabled on your machine.



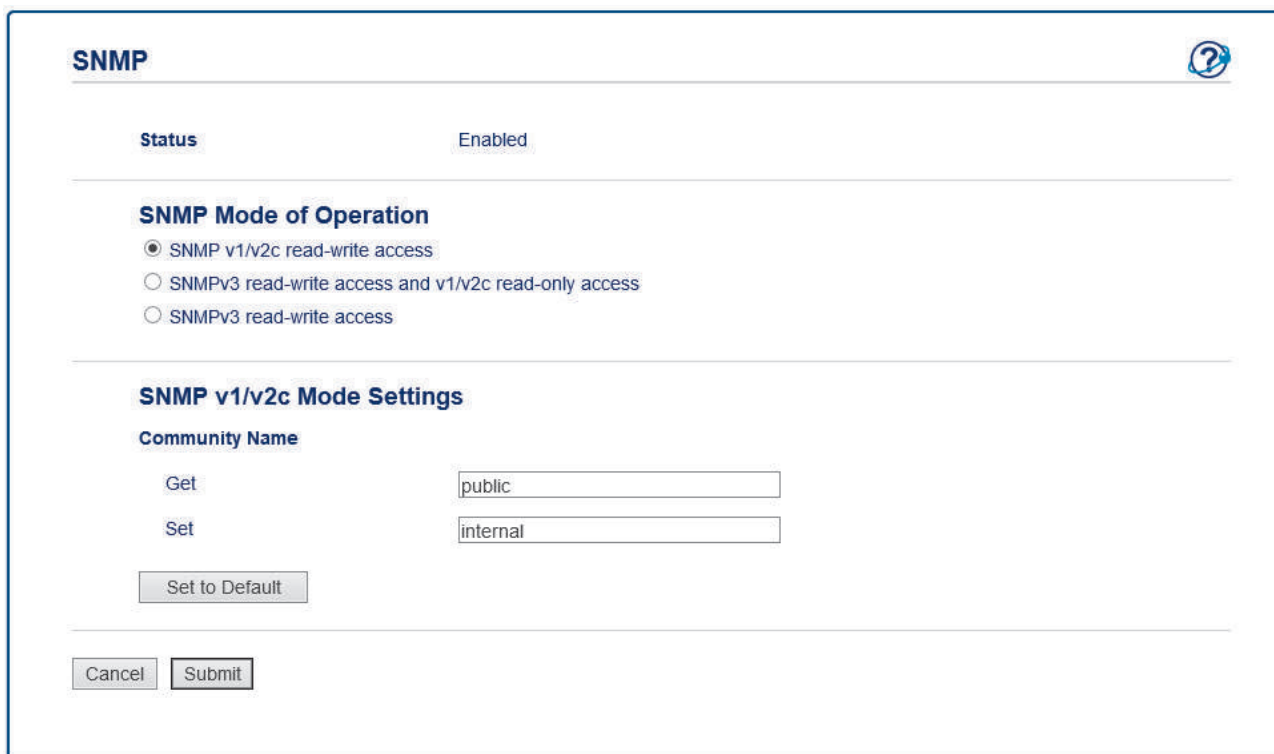
- The HTTPS protocol is enabled by default.
- You can change the HTTPS protocol settings using the Web Based Management screen.
  - Click the **Network** tab.
  - Click the **Protocol** menu in the left navigation bar.
  - Click **HTTP Server Settings**.

- Start your web browser.
- Type "https://Common Name" in your browser's address bar (where "Common Name" is the Common Name that you assigned to the certificate; this could be your IP address, node name, or domain name).
- Type a password if you have set one, and then click . The default password is initpass.
- You can now access the machine using HTTPS.



- If you use the SNMPv3 protocol, follow the steps below.

- Click the **Network** tab.
- Click **Protocol**.
- Make sure the **SNMP** setting is enabled, and then click **Advanced Settings**.
- Configure the SNMP settings.



The screenshot shows the 'SNMP' configuration page. At the top, the title 'SNMP' is displayed with a help icon. Below the title, the 'Status' is shown as 'Enabled'. The 'SNMP Mode of Operation' section has three radio button options: 'SNMP v1/v2c read-write access' (selected), 'SNMPv3 read-write access and v1/v2c read-only access', and 'SNMPv3 read-write access'. The 'SNMP v1/v2c Mode Settings' section includes a 'Community Name' table with two rows: 'Get' with the value 'public' and 'Set' with the value 'internal'. There is a 'Set to Default' button below the table. At the bottom of the form are 'Cancel' and 'Submit' buttons.

There are three options for **SNMP Mode of Operation**.

- SNMP v1/v2c read-write access**

---

In this mode, the print server uses version 1 and version 2c of the SNMP protocol. You can use all applications in this mode. However, it is not secure since it will not authenticate the user, and data will not be encrypted.

- **SNMPv3 read-write access and v1/v2c read-only access**

In this mode, the print server uses the read-write access of version 3 and the read-only access of version 1 and version 2c of the SNMP protocol.

- **SNMPv3 read-write access**

In this mode, the print server uses version 3 of the SNMP protocol. If you want to manage the print server securely, use this mode.



## Related Information

- [Manage Your Network Machine Securely Using SSL/TLS](#)
-



## Print Documents Securely Using SSL/TLS

To print documents securely with IPP protocol, use the IPPS protocol.

1. Start your web browser.
2. Type "http://machine's IP address" in your browser's address bar (where "machine's IP address" is the machine's IP address).

For example:

http://192.168.1.2



- If you are using a Domain Name System or enable a NetBIOS name, you can type another name, such as "SharedPrinter" instead of the IP address.

- For example:

http://SharedPrinter

If you enable a NetBIOS name, you can also use the node name.

- For example:

http://KMNxxxxxxxxxxxx

The NetBIOS name can be found in the Network Configuration Report.

3. Type a password if you have set one, and then click . The default password is initpass.
4. Click the **Network** tab.
5. Click **Protocol**. Make sure the **IPP** check box is selected.



If the **IPP** check box is not selected, select the **IPP** check box, and then click **Submit**.

Restart your machine to activate the configuration.

After the machine restarts, return to the machine's web page, click the **Network** tab, and then click **Protocol**.

6. Click **HTTP Server Settings**.
7. Select the **HTTPS(Port443)** check box, and then click **Submit**.
8. Restart your machine to activate the configuration.

Communication using IPPS cannot prevent unauthorised access to the print server.



### Related Information

- [Manage Your Network Machine Securely Using SSL/TLS](#)

## Manage Your Network Machine Securely Using IPsec

- [Introduction to IPsec](#)
- [Configure IPsec Using Web Based Management](#)
- [Configure an IPsec Address Template Using Web Based Management](#)
- [Configure an IPsec Template Using Web Based Management](#)

## Introduction to IPsec

IPsec (Internet Protocol Security) is a security protocol that uses an optional Internet Protocol function to prevent manipulation and ensure the confidentiality of data transmitted as IP packets. IPsec encrypts data carried over the network, such as print data sent from computers to a printer. Because the data is encrypted at the network layer, applications that employ a higher-level protocol use IPsec even if the user is not aware of its use.

IPsec supports the following functions:

- IPsec transmissions

According to the IPsec setting conditions, the network-connected computer sends data to and receives data from the specified device using IPsec. When the devices start communicating using IPsec, keys are exchanged using Internet Key Exchange (IKE) first, and then the encrypted data is transmitted using the keys.

In addition, IPsec has two operation modes: the Transport mode and Tunnel mode. The Transport mode is used mainly for communication between devices and the Tunnel mode is used in environments such as a Virtual Private Network (VPN).



For IPsec transmissions, the following conditions are necessary:

- A computer that can communicate using IPsec is connected to the network.
- Your machine is configured for IPsec communication.
- The computer connected to your machine is configured for IPsec connections.

- IPsec settings

The settings that are necessary for connections using IPsec. These settings can be configured using Web Based Management.



To configure the IPsec settings, you must use the browser on a computer that is connected to the network.



### Related Information

- [Manage Your Network Machine Securely Using IPsec](#)

## Configure IPsec Using Web Based Management

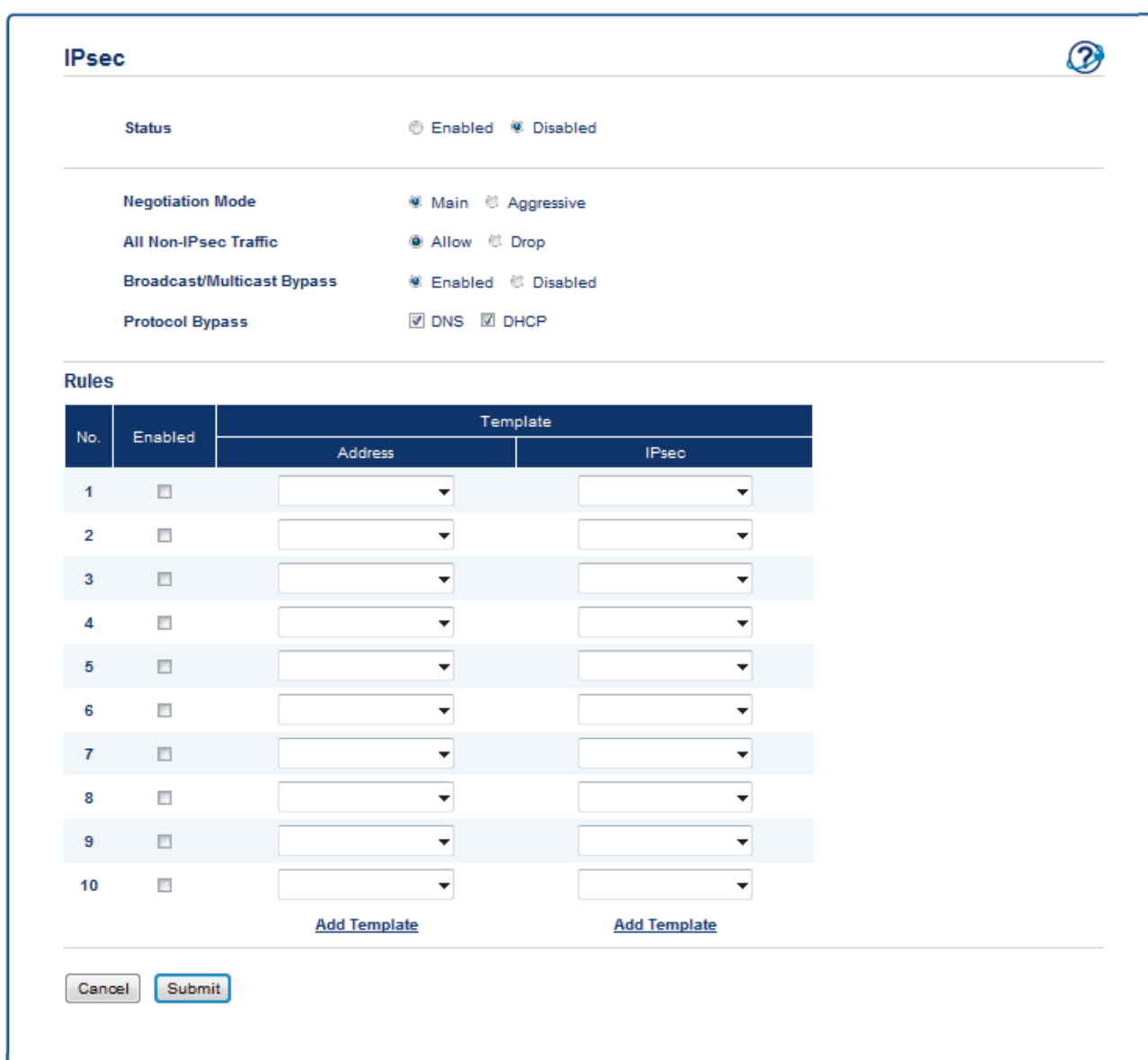
The IPsec connection conditions are comprised of two **Template** types: **Address** and **IPsec**. You can configure up to 10 connection conditions.

1. Start your web browser.
2. Type "http://machine's IP address" in your browser's address bar (where "machine's IP address" is the machine's IP address).

For example:

http://192.168.1.2

3. Type a password if you have set one, and then click . The default password is initpass.
4. Click the **Network** tab.
5. Click **Security**.
6. Click the **IPsec** menu in the left navigation bar.



**IPsec**

Status ☐ Enabled ☐ Disabled

Negotiation Mode ☒ Main ☐ Aggressive

All Non-IPsec Traffic ☒ Allow ☐ Drop

Broadcast/Multicast Bypass ☒ Enabled ☐ Disabled

Protocol Bypass ☒ DNS ☒ DHCP

**Rules**

| No. | Enabled                  | Template             |                      |
|-----|--------------------------|----------------------|----------------------|
|     |                          | Address              | IPsec                |
| 1   | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="text"/> | <input type="text"/> |
| 2   | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="text"/> | <input type="text"/> |
| 3   | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="text"/> | <input type="text"/> |
| 4   | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="text"/> | <input type="text"/> |
| 5   | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="text"/> | <input type="text"/> |
| 6   | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="text"/> | <input type="text"/> |
| 7   | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="text"/> | <input type="text"/> |
| 8   | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="text"/> | <input type="text"/> |
| 9   | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="text"/> | <input type="text"/> |
| 10  | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="text"/> | <input type="text"/> |

[Add Template](#) [Add Template](#)

7. In the **Status** field, enable or disable IPsec.
8. Select **Negotiation Mode** for IKE Phase 1.

IKE is a protocol that is used to exchange encryption keys in order to carry out encrypted communication using IPsec.

---

In **Main** mode, the processing speed is slow, but the security is high. In **Aggressive** mode, the processing speed is faster than **Main** mode, but the security is lower.

9. In the **All Non-IPsec Traffic** field, select the action to be taken for non-IPsec packets.

When using Web Services, you must select **Allow** for **All Non-IPsec Traffic**. If you select **Drop**, Web Services cannot be used.

10. In the **Broadcast/Multicast Bypass** field, select **Enabled** or **Disabled**.

11. In the **Protocol Bypass** field, select the check box for the option or options you want.

12. In the **Rules** table, select the **Enabled** check box to activate the template.

When you select multiple check boxes, the lower numbered check boxes have priority if the settings for the selected check boxes conflict.

13. Click on the corresponding drop-down list to select the **Address Template** that is used for the IPsec connection conditions.

To add an **Address Template**, click **Add Template**.

14. Click on the corresponding drop-down list to select the **IPsec Template** that is used for the IPsec connection conditions.

To add an **IPsec Template**, click **Add Template**.

15. Click **Submit**.

If the computer must be restarted to register the new settings, the restart confirmation screen will appear.

If there is a blank item in the template you enabled in the **Rules** table, an error message appears. Confirm your choices and submit again.

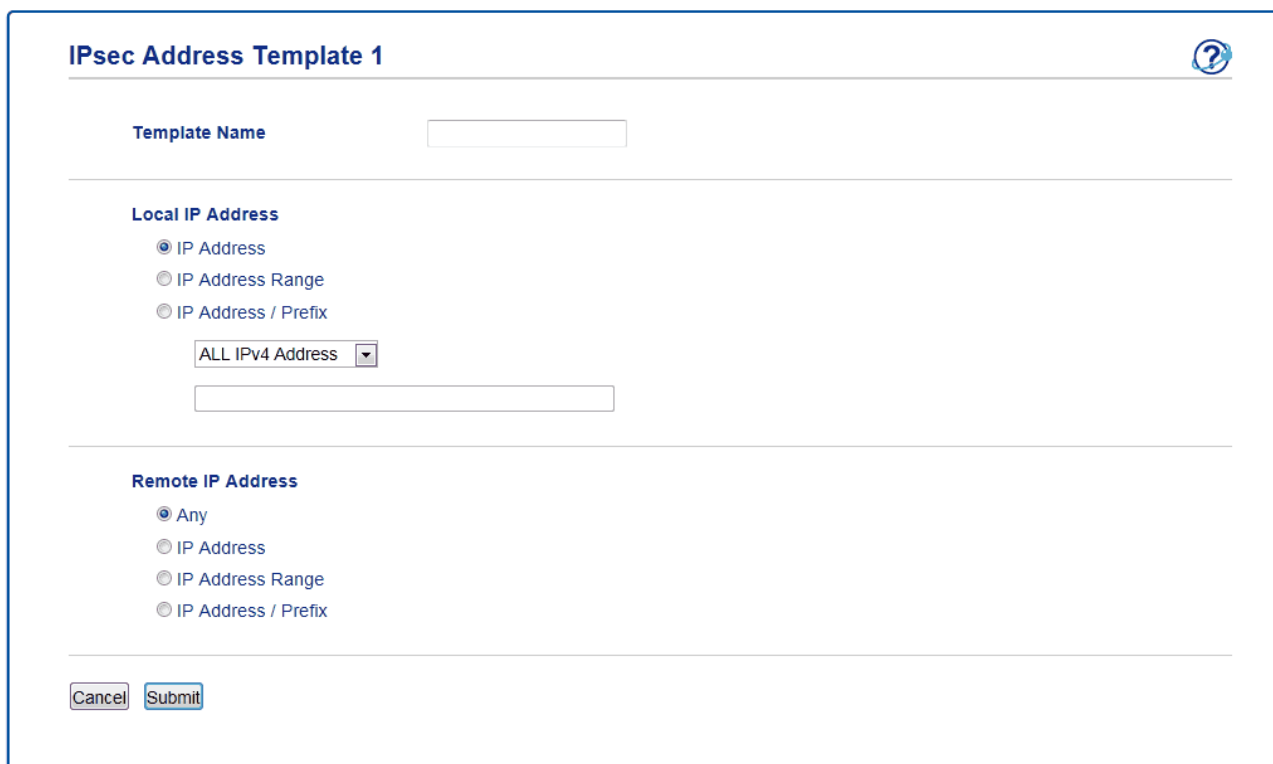


## Related Information

- [Manage Your Network Machine Securely Using IPsec](#)
-

## Configure an IPsec Address Template Using Web Based Management

1. Start your web browser.
2. Type "http://machine's IP address" in your browser's address bar (where "machine's IP address" is the machine's IP address).  
For example:  
http://192.168.1.2
3. Type a password if you have set one, and then click . The default password is initpass.
4. Click the **Network** tab.
5. Click **Security**.
6. Click the **IPsec Address Template** menu in the left navigation bar.  
The Template List appears, displaying 10 Address Templates.  
Click the **Delete** button to delete an **Address Template**. When an **Address Template** is in use, it cannot be deleted.
7. Click the **Address Template** that you want to create. The **IPsec Address Template** appears.



**IPsec Address Template 1**

Template Name

**Local IP Address**

☒ IP Address  
☐ IP Address Range  
☐ IP Address / Prefix

ALL IPv4 Address

**Remote IP Address**

☒ Any  
☐ IP Address  
☐ IP Address Range  
☐ IP Address / Prefix

8. In the **Template Name** field, type a name for the template (up to 16 characters).
9. Select a **Local IP Address** option to specify the IP address conditions for the sender:
  - **IP Address**  
Specify the IP address. Select **ALL IPv4 Address**, **ALL IPv6 Address**, **ALL Link Local IPv6**, or **Custom** from the drop-down list.  
If you select **Custom** from the drop-down list, type the IP address (IPv4 or IPv6) in the text box.
  - **IP Address Range**  
Type the starting and ending IP addresses for the IP address range in the text boxes. If the starting and ending IP addresses are not standardized to IPv4 or IPv6, or the ending IP address is smaller than the starting address, an error will occur.
  - **IP Address / Prefix**  
Specify the IP address using CIDR notation.

---

For example: 192.168.1.1/24

Because the prefix is specified in the form of a 24-bit subnet mask (255.255.255.0) for 192.168.1.1, the addresses 192.168.1.xxx are valid.

10. Select a **Remote IP Address** option to specify the IP address conditions for the recipient:

- **Any**

If you select **Any**, all IP addresses are enabled.

- **IP Address**

Type the specified IP address (IPv4 or IPv6) in the text box.

- **IP Address Range**

Type the starting and ending IP addresses for the IP address range. If the starting and ending IP addresses are not standardized to IPv4 or IPv6, or the ending IP address is smaller than the starting address, an error will occur.

- **IP Address / Prefix**

Specify the IP address using CIDR notation.

For example: 192.168.1.1/24

Because the prefix is specified in the form of a 24-bit subnet mask (255.255.255.0) for 192.168.1.1, the addresses 192.168.1.xxx are valid.

11. Click **Submit**.



When you change the settings for the template currently in use, the IPsec screen in Web Based Management will close and open again.

---



## Related Information

- [Manage Your Network Machine Securely Using IPsec](#)
-

## Configure an IPsec Template Using Web Based Management

1. Start your web browser.
2. Type "http://machine's IP address" in your browser's address bar (where "machine's IP address" is the machine's IP address).  
For example:  
http://192.168.1.2
3. Type a password if you have set one, and then click . The default password is initpass.
4. Click the **Network** tab.
5. Click **Security**.
6. Click **IPsec Template** in the left navigation bar.  
The Template List appears, displaying 10 IPsec Templates.  
Click the **Delete** button to delete an **IPsec Template**. When an **IPsec Template** is in use, it cannot be deleted.
7. Click **IPsec Template** that you want to create. The **IPsec Template** screen appears. The configuration fields differ based on the **Use Prefixed Template** and **Internet Key Exchange (IKE)** you select.
8. In the **Template Name** field, type a name for the template (up to 16 characters).
9. Select the **Internet Key Exchange (IKE)** options.
10. Click **Submit**.



## IPsec Template 1



Template Name

Use Prefixed Template

Internet Key Exchange (IKE)

IKEv1

### Authentication Type

Diffie-Hellman Group

Group5  
Group14

Encryption

AES-CBC 128  
AES-CBC 256

Hash

SHA1  
SHA256  
SHA512

SA Lifetime

28800 second(s)  
(240 – 63072000)  
32768 KByte  
(10 – 2097152)

### Encapsulating Security

Protocol

ESP

Encryption

AES-CBC 128  
AES-CBC 256

Hash

SHA1  
SHA256  
SHA512

SA Lifetime

3600 second(s)  
(240 – 63072000)  
65536 KByte  
(10 – 2097152)

Encapsulation Mode

☒ Transport ☐ Tunnel

Remote Router IP-Address

Perfect Forward Secrecy (PFS)

☐ Enabled ☒ Disabled

Authentication Method

☒ Pre-Shared Key  
☐ Certificates

Pre-Shared Key

Local

ID Type

IPv4 Address

ID

Remote

ID Type

IPv4 Address

ID

[Certificate>>](#)



## Related Information

- Manage Your Network Machine Securely Using IPsec
  - IKEv1 Settings for an IPsec Template
  - IKEv2 Settings for an IPsec Template
  - Manual Settings for an IPsec Template

## IKEv1 Settings for an IPsec Template

**IPsec Template 1**

Template Name

Use Prefixed Template

Custom

Internet Key Exchange (IKE)

☒ IKEv1 ☐ IKEv2 ☐ Manual

Authentication Type

Diffie-Hellman Group

Group1

Encryption

DES

Hash

MD5

SA Lifetime

88800 second(s)  
(240 – 63072000)  
32768 KByte  
(10 – 2097152)

Encapsulating Security

Protocol

☒ ESP ☐ AH ☐ AH+ESP

Encryption

DES

Hash

MD5

SA Lifetime

43200 second(s)  
(120 – 4233600)  
65536 KByte  
(10 – 4194304)

Encapsulation Mode

☒ Transport ☐ Tunnel

Remote Router IP-Address

Perfect Forward Secrecy (PFS)

☐ Enabled ☒ Disabled

Authentication Method

☒ Pre-Shared Key ☐ Certificates

Pre-Shared Key

Local

ID Type

IPv4 Address

ID

Remote

ID Type

IPv4 Address

ID

[Certificate>>](#)

Cancel

Submit

**Template Name**  
Type a name for the template (up to 16 characters).

165

---

## Use Prefixed Template

Select **Custom**, **IKEv1 High Security** or **IKEv1 Medium Security**. The setting items are different depending on the selected template.



---

The default template differs depending on whether you chose **Main** or **Aggressive** for **Negotiation Mode** on the **IPsec** configuration screen.

---

## Internet Key Exchange (IKE)

IKE is a communication protocol that is used to exchange encryption keys in order to carry out encrypted communication using IPsec. To carry out encrypted communication for that time only, the encryption algorithm that is necessary for IPsec is determined and the encryption keys are shared. For IKE, the encryption keys are exchanged using the Diffie-Hellman key exchange method, and encrypted communication that is limited to IKE is carried out.

If you selected **Custom** in **Use Prefixed Template**, select **IKEv1**.

## Authentication Type

Configure the IKE authentication and encryption.

- **Diffie-Hellman Group**

This key exchange method allows secret keys to be securely exchanged over an unprotected network. The Diffie-Hellman key exchange method uses a discrete logarithm problem, not the secret key, to send and receive open information that was generated using a random number and the secret key.

Select **Group1**, **Group2**, **Group5**, or **Group14**.

- **Encryption**

Select **DES**, **3DES**, **AES-CBC 128**, or **AES-CBC 256**.

- **Hash**

Select **MD5**, **SHA1**, **SHA256**, **SHA384** or **SHA512**.

- **SA Lifetime**

Specify the IKE SA lifetime.

Type the time (seconds) and number of kilobytes (KByte).

## Encapsulating Security

- **Protocol**

Select **ESP**, **AH+ESP** or **AH**.



---

- ESP is a protocol for carrying out encrypted communication using IPsec. ESP encrypts the payload (communicated contents) and adds additional information. The IP packet is comprised of the header and the encrypted payload, which follows the header. In addition to the encrypted data, the IP packet also includes information regarding the encryption method and encryption key, the authentication data, and so on.

- AH is part of the IPsec protocol that authenticates the sender and prevents manipulation (ensures the completeness) of the data. In the IP packet, the data is inserted immediately after the header. In addition, the packets include hash values, which are calculated using an equation from the communicated contents, secret key, and so on, in order to prevent the falsification of the sender and manipulation of the data. Unlike ESP, the communicated contents are not encrypted, and the data is sent and received as plain text.

---

- **Encryption**

Select **DES**, **3DES**, **AES-CBC 128**, or **AES-CBC 256**. The encryption can be selected only when **ESP** is selected in **Protocol**.

- **Hash**

Select **None**, **MD5**, **SHA1**, **SHA256**, **SHA384**, or **SHA512**. **None** can be selected only when **ESP** is selected in **Protocol**.

When **AH+ESP** is selected in **Protocol**, select each protocol for **Hash(AH)** and **Hash(ESP)**.

- **SA Lifetime**

Specify the IPsec SA lifetime.

---

Type the time (seconds) and number of kilobytes (KByte) before the IPsec SA will expire.

- **Encapsulation Mode**

Select **Transport** or **Tunnel**.

- **Remote Router IP-Address**

Type the IP address (IPv4 or IPv6) of the remote router. Enter this information only when the **Tunnel** mode is selected.



---

SA (Security Association) is an encrypted communication method using IPsec or IPv6 that exchanges and shares information, such as the encryption method and encryption key, in order to establish a secure communication channel before communication begins. SA may also refer to a virtual encrypted communication channel that has been established. The SA used for IPsec establishes the encryption method, exchanges the keys, and carries out mutual authentication according to the IKE (Internet Key Exchange) standard procedure. In addition, the SA is updated periodically.

---

### Perfect Forward Secrecy (PFS)

PFS does not derive keys from previous keys that were used to encrypt messages. In addition, if a key that is used to encrypt a message was derived from a parent key, that parent key is not used to derive other keys. Therefore, even if a key is compromised, the damage will be limited only to the messages that were encrypted using that key.

Select **Enabled** or **Disabled**.

### Authentication Method

Select the authentication method. Select **Pre-Shared Key** or **Certificates**.

#### Pre-Shared Key

When encrypting communication, the encryption key is exchanged and shared beforehand using another channel.

If you selected **Pre-Shared Key** for the **Authentication Method**, type the **Pre-Shared Key** (up to 32 characters).

- **Local/ID Type/ID**

Select the sender's ID type, and then type the ID.

Select **IPv4 Address**, **IPv6 Address**, **FQDN**, **E-mail Address**, or **Certificate** for the type.

If you select **Certificate**, type the common name of the certificate in the **ID** field.

- **Remote/ID Type/ID**

Select the recipient's ID type, and then type the ID.

Select **IPv4 Address**, **IPv6 Address**, **FQDN**, **E-mail Address**, or **Certificate** for the type.

If you select **Certificate**, type the common name of the certificate in the **ID** field.

### Certificates

If you selected **Certificates** for **Authentication Method**, select the certificate.



---

You can select only the certificates that were created using the **Certificate** page of Web Based Management's Security configuration screen.

---



### Related Information

- [Configure an IPsec Template Using Web Based Management](#)
-

## IKEv2 Settings for an IPsec Template

IPsec Template 1

Template Name

Use Prefixed Template

Custom

Internet Key Exchange (IKE)

☒ IKEv1 ☒ IKEv2 ☐ Manual

Authentication Type

Diffie-Hellman Group

☒ Group1 ☐ Group2 ☐ Group5 ☐ Group14

Encryption

☒ DES ☐ 3DES ☐ AES-CBC 128  
☐ AES-CBC 256

Hash

☒ MD5 ☐ SHA1 ☐ SHA256 ☐ SHA384  
☐ SHA512

SA Lifetime

86600 second(s)  
(240 – 63072000)

32768 KByte  
(10 – 2097152)

Encapsulating Security

Protocol

☒ ESP

Encryption

☒ DES ☐ 3DES ☐ AES-CBC 128  
☐ AES-CBC 256

Hash

☒ MD5 ☐ SHA1 ☐ SHA256 ☐ SHA384  
☐ SHA512

SA Lifetime

43200 second(s)  
(120 – 4233600)

86536 KByte  
(10 – 4194304)

Encapsulation Mode

☒ Transport ☐ Tunnel

Remote Router IP-Address

Perfect Forward Secrecy (PFS)

☐ Enabled ☒ Disabled

Authentication Method

☒ Pre-Shared Key  
☐ Certificates  
☐ EAP - MD5  
☐ EAP - MS-CHAPv2

Pre-Shared Key

Local

ID Type

IPv4 Address

ID

Remote

ID Type

IPv4 Address

ID

[Certificate>>](#)

Cancel

Submit

### Template Name

Type a name for the template (up to 16 characters).

168

---

## Use Prefixed Template

Select **Custom**, **IKEv2 High Security**, or **IKEv2 Medium Security**. The setting items are different depending on the selected template.

## Internet Key Exchange (IKE)

IKE is a communication protocol that is used to exchange encryption keys in order to carry out encrypted communication using IPsec. To carry out encrypted communication for that time only, the encryption algorithm that is necessary for IPsec is determined and the encryption keys are shared. For IKE, the encryption keys are exchanged using the Diffie-Hellman key exchange method, and encrypted communication that is limited to IKE is carried out.

If you selected **Custom** in **Use Prefixed Template**, select **IKEv2**.

## Authentication Type

Configure the IKE authentication and encryption.

- **Diffie-Hellman Group**

This key exchange method allows secret keys to be securely exchanged over an unprotected network. The Diffie-Hellman key exchange method uses a discrete logarithm problem, not the secret key, to send and receive open information that was generated using a random number and the secret key.

Select **Group1**, **Group2**, **Group5**, or **Group14**.

- **Encryption**

Select **DES**, **3DES**, **AES-CBC 128**, or **AES-CBC 256**.

- **Hash**

Select **MD5**, **SHA1**, **SHA256**, **SHA384** or **SHA512**.

- **SA Lifetime**

Specify the IKE SA lifetime.

Type the time (seconds) and number of kilobytes (KByte).

## Encapsulating Security

- **Protocol**

Select **ESP**.



ESP is a protocol for carrying out encrypted communication using IPsec. ESP encrypts the payload (communicated contents) and adds additional information. The IP packet is comprised of the header and the encrypted payload, which follows the header. In addition to the encrypted data, the IP packet also includes information regarding the encryption method and encryption key, the authentication data, and so on.

---

- **Encryption**

Select **DES**, **3DES**, **AES-CBC 128**, or **AES-CBC 256**.

- **Hash**

Select **MD5**, **SHA1**, **SHA256**, **SHA384**, or **SHA512**.

- **SA Lifetime**

Specify the IPsec SA lifetime.

Type the time (seconds) and number of kilobytes (KByte) before the IPsec SA will expire.

- **Encapsulation Mode**

Select **Transport** or **Tunnel**.

- **Remote Router IP-Address**

Type the IP address (IPv4 or IPv6) of the remote router. Enter this information only when the **Tunnel** mode is selected.



---

SA (Security Association) is an encrypted communication method using IPsec or IPv6 that exchanges and shares information, such as the encryption method and encryption key, in order to establish a secure communication channel before communication begins. SA may also refer to a virtual encrypted communication channel that has been established. The SA used for IPsec establishes the encryption method, exchanges the keys, and carries out mutual authentication according to the IKE (Internet Key Exchange) standard procedure. In addition, the SA is updated periodically.

---

### Perfect Forward Secrecy (PFS)

PFS does not derive keys from previous keys that were used to encrypt messages. In addition, if a key that is used to encrypt a message was derived from a parent key, that parent key is not used to derive other keys. Therefore, even if a key is compromised, the damage will be limited only to the messages that were encrypted using that key.

Select **Enabled** or **Disabled**.

### Authentication Method

Select the authentication method. Select **Pre-Shared Key**, **Certificates**, **EAP - MD5**, or **EAP - MS-CHAPv2**.

#### Pre-Shared Key

When encrypting communication, the encryption key is exchanged and shared beforehand using another channel.

If you selected **Pre-Shared Key** for the **Authentication Method**, type the **Pre-Shared Key** (up to 32 characters).

- **Local/ID Type/ID**

Select the sender's ID type, and then type the ID.

Select **IPv4 Address**, **IPv6 Address**, **FQDN**, **E-mail Address**, or **Certificate** for the type.

If you select **Certificate**, type the common name of the certificate in the **ID** field.

- **Remote/ID Type/ID**

Select the recipient's ID type, and then type the ID.

Select **IPv4 Address**, **IPv6 Address**, **FQDN**, **E-mail Address**, or **Certificate** for the type.

If you select **Certificate**, type the common name of the certificate in the **ID** field.

### Certificates

If you selected **Certificates** for **Authentication Method**, select the certificate.



---

You can select only the certificates that were created using the **Certificate** page of Web Based Management's Security configuration screen.

---

### EAP

EAP is an authentication protocol that is an extension of PPP. By using EAP with IEEE802.1x, a different key is used for user authentication during each session.

The following settings are necessary only when **EAP - MD5** or **EAP - MS-CHAPv2** is selected in **Authentication Method**:

- **Mode**

Select **Server-Mode** or **Client-Mode**.

- **Certificate**

Select the certificate.

- **User Name**

Type the user name (up to 32 characters).

- **Password**

Type the password (up to 32 characters). The password must be entered two times for confirmation.

- **Certificate**

Click this button to move to the **Certificate** configuration screen.



## Related Information

- [Configure an IPsec Template Using Web Based Management](#)
-



## Manual Settings for an IPsec Template

### IPsec Template 1

Template Name

Use Prefixed Template

Custom

Internet Key Exchange (IKE)

☒ IKEv1 ☐ IKEv2 ☒ Manual

Authentication Key (ESP, AH)

In

Out

Code key (ESP)

In

Out

SPI

In

256

Out

256

Encapsulating Security

Protocol

☒ ESP ☐ AH

Encryption

DES

Hash

MD5

SA Lifetime

43200

second(s)

(120 - 4233600)

65536

KByte

(10 - 4194304)

Encapsulation Mode

☒ Transport ☐ Tunnel

Remote Router IP-Address

Certificate

Cancel

Submit

### Template Name

Type a name for the template (up to 16 characters).

### Use Prefixed Template

Select **Custom**.

### Internet Key Exchange (IKE)

IKE is a communication protocol that is used to exchange encryption keys in order to carry out encrypted communication using IPsec. To carry out encrypted communication for that time only, the encryption algorithm that is necessary for IPsec is determined and the encryption keys are shared. For IKE, the encryption keys are exchanged using the Diffie-Hellman key exchange method, and encrypted communication that is limited to IKE is carried out.

---

Select **Manual**.

### Authentication Key (ESP,AH)

Specify the key to use for authentication. Type the **In/Out** values.

These settings are necessary when **Custom** is selected for **Use Prefixed Template**, **Manual** is selected for **Internet Key Exchange (IKE)**, and a setting other than **None** is selected for **Hash** for **Encapsulating Security** section.



---

The number of characters you can set differs depending on the setting you chose for **Hash** in the **Encapsulating Security** section.

If the length of the specified authentication key is different than the selected hash algorithm, an error will occur.

- **MD5**: 128 bits (16 bytes)
- **SHA1**: 160 bits (20 bytes)
- **SHA256**: 256 bits (32 bytes)
- **SHA384**: 384 bits (48 bytes)
- **SHA512**: 512 bits (64 bytes)

When you specify the key in ASCII Code, enclose the characters in double quotation marks ("").

---

### Code key (ESP)

Specify the key to use for encryption. Type the **In/Out** values.

These settings are necessary when **Custom** is selected in **Use Prefixed Template**, **Manual** is selected in **Internet Key Exchange (IKE)**, and **ESP** is selected in **Protocol** in **Encapsulating Security**.



---

The number of characters you can set differs depending on the setting you chose for **Encryption** in the **Encapsulating Security** section.

If the length of the specified code key is different than the selected encryption algorithm, an error will occur.

- **DES**: 64 bits (8 bytes)
- **3DES**: 192 bits (24 bytes)
- **AES-CBC 128**: 128 bits (16 bytes)
- **AES-CBC 256**: 256 bits (32 bytes)

When you specify the key in ASCII Code, enclose the characters in double quotation marks ("").

---

### SPI

These parameters are used to identify security information. Generally, a host has multiple Security Associations (SAs) for several types of IPsec communication. Therefore, it is necessary to identify the applicable SA when an IPsec packet is received. The SPI parameter, which identifies the SA, is included in the Authentication Header (AH) and Encapsulating Security Payload (ESP) header.

These settings are necessary when **Custom** is selected for **Use Prefixed Template**, and **Manual** is selected for **Internet Key Exchange (IKE)**.

Enter the **In/Out** values. (3-10 characters)

### Encapsulating Security

- **Protocol**  
Select **ESP** or **AH**.



- ESP is a protocol for carrying out encrypted communication using IPsec. ESP encrypts the payload (communicated contents) and adds additional information. The IP packet is comprised of the header and the encrypted payload, which follows the header. In addition to the encrypted data, the IP packet also includes information regarding the encryption method and encryption key, the authentication data, and so on.
- AH is part of the IPsec protocol that authenticates the sender and prevents manipulation of the data (ensures the completeness of the data). In the IP packet, the data is inserted immediately after the header. In addition, the packets include hash values, which are calculated using an equation from the communicated contents, secret key, and so on, in order to prevent the falsification of the sender and manipulation of the data. Unlike ESP, the communicated contents are not encrypted, and the data is sent and received as plain text.

- **Encryption**

Select **DES**, **3DES**, **AES-CBC 128**, or **AES-CBC 256**. The encryption can be selected only when **ESP** is selected in **Protocol**.

- **Hash**

Select **None**, **MD5**, **SHA1**, **SHA256**, **SHA384**, or **SHA512**. **None** can be selected only when **ESP** is selected in **Protocol**.

- **SA Lifetime**

Specify the IKE SA lifetime.

Type the time (seconds) and number of kilobytes (KByte) before the IPsec SA will expire.

- **Encapsulation Mode**

Select **Transport** or **Tunnel**.

- **Remote Router IP-Address**

Specify the IP address (IPv4 or IPv6) of the connection destination. Enter this information only when the **Tunnel** mode is selected.



SA (Security Association) is an encrypted communication method using IPsec or IPv6 that exchanges and shares information, such as the encryption method and encryption key, in order to establish a secure communication channel before communication begins. SA may also refer to a virtual encrypted communication channel that has been established. The SA used for IPsec establishes the encryption method, exchanges the keys, and carries out mutual authentication according to the IKE (Internet Key Exchange) standard procedure. In addition, the SA is updated periodically.

## Submit

Click this button to register the settings.



When you change the settings for the template currently in use, the IPsec screen in Web Based Management will close and open again.



## Related Information

- [Configure an IPsec Template Using Web Based Management](#)

## Send an Email Securely

- [Configure Email Sending Using Web Based Management](#)
- [Send an Email with User Authentication](#)
- [Send an Email Securely Using SSL TLS](#)

## Configure Email Sending Using Web Based Management

We recommend using Web Based Management to configure secured email sending with user authentication, or email sending using SSL/TLS.

1. Start your web browser.
2. Type "http://machine's IP address" in your browser's address bar (where "machine's IP address" is the machine's IP address).

For example:

http://192.168.1.2



- If you are using a Domain Name System or enable a NetBIOS name, you can type another name, such as "SharedPrinter" instead of the IP address.

- For example:

http://SharedPrinter

If you enable a NetBIOS name, you can also use the node name.

- For example:

http://KMNxxxxxxxxxxxx

The NetBIOS name can be found in the Network Configuration Report.

3. Type a password if you have set one, and then click . The default password is initpass.
4. Click the **Network** tab.
5. Click **Protocol** in the left navigation bar.
6. In the **SMTP** field, click **Advanced Settings** and make sure the status of **SMTP** is **Enabled**.
7. Configure the **SMTP** settings.
  - Confirm that the email settings are correct after configuration by sending a test email.
  - If you do not know the SMTP server settings, contact your network administrator or Internet Service Provider (ISP).
8. When finished, click **Submit**.

The **Test Send E-mail Configuration** dialog box appears.
9. Follow the instructions in the dialog box to test the current settings.



### Related Information

- [Send an Email Securely](#)

## Send an Email with User Authentication

Your machine supports the SMTP-AUTH method to send email via an email server that requires user authentication. This method prevents unauthorised users from accessing the email server.

You can use the SMTP-AUTH method for email notification and email reports (available for certain models).



We recommend using Web Based Management to configure the SMTP authentication.

### Email Server Settings

You must configure your machine's SMTP authentication method to match the method used by your email server. For details about your email server settings, contact your network administrator or Internet Service Provider (ISP).



To enable SMTP server authentication, in the Web Based Management **SMTP** screen, under **Server Authentication Method**, you must select **SMTP-AUTH**.



### Related Information

- [Send an Email Securely](#)

## Send an Email Securely Using SSL TLS

Your machine supports SSL/TLS methods to send an email via an email server that requires secure SSL/TLS communication. To send email via an email server that is using SSL/TLS communication, you must configure SMTP over SSL/TLS.



We recommend using Web Based Management to configure SSL/TLS.

### Verify Server Certificate

Under **SSL/TLS**, if you choose **SSL** or **TLS**, the **Verify Server Certificate** check box will be selected automatically.

**SMTP**

Status Enabled

**Send E-mail Settings(SMTP)**

Server Address

0.0.0.0

Port

25

Server Authentication Method

☒ None  
☐ SMTP-AUTH

SMTP-AUTH Account Name

SMTP-AUTH Account Password

Enter password

Retype password

SSL/TLS

☒ None  
☐ SSL  
☐ TLS  
☐ Verify Server Certificate

Device E-mail Address

XXXXXXXXXXXX@example.com

[CA Certificate>>](#)

[E-mail report>>](#)

[Notification>>](#)

Cancel

Submit



- Before you verify the server certificate, you must import the CA certificate issued by the CA that signed the server certificate. Contact your network administrator or your Internet Service Provider (ISP) to confirm if importing a CA certificate is necessary.
- If you do not need to verify the server certificate, clear the **Verify Server Certificate** check box.



### Related Information

- [Send an Email Securely](#)

## Use IEEE 802.1x Authentication for a Wired or a Wireless Network

- [What Is IEEE 802.1x Authentication?](#)
- [Configure IEEE 802.1x Authentication for a Wired or a Wireless Network Using Web Based Management \(Web Browser\)](#)
- [IEEE 802.1x Authentication Methods](#)



## What Is IEEE 802.1x Authentication?

IEEE 802.1x is an IEEE standard for wired and wireless networks that limits access from unauthorised network devices. Your machine (supplicant) sends an authentication request to a RADIUS server (Authentication server) through your access point or HUB. After your request has been verified by the RADIUS server, your machine can access the network.



### Related Information

- [Use IEEE 802.1x Authentication for a Wired or a Wireless Network](#)
-

## Configure IEEE 802.1x Authentication for a Wired or a Wireless Network Using Web Based Management (Web Browser)

- If you configure your machine using EAP-TLS authentication, you must install the client certificate issued by a CA before you start configuration. Contact your network administrator about the client certificate. If you have installed more than one certificate, we recommend writing down the certificate name you want to use.
- Before you verify the server certificate, you must import the CA certificate that has been issued by the CA that signed the server certificate. Contact your network administrator or your Internet Service Provider (ISP) to confirm whether a CA certificate import is necessary.



You can also configure IEEE 802.1x authentication using:

- Wireless setup wizard from the control panel (Wireless network)
- Wireless setup wizard on the Utilities CD (Wireless network)

1. Start your web browser.
2. Type "http://machine's IP address" in your browser's address bar (where "machine's IP address" is the machine's IP address).

For example:

http://192.168.1.2



- If you are using a Domain Name System or enable a NetBIOS name, you can type another name, such as "SharedPrinter" instead of the IP address.

- For example:

http://SharedPrinter

If you enable a NetBIOS name, you can also use the node name.

- For example:

http://KMNxxxxxxxxxxx

The NetBIOS name can be found in the Network Configuration Report.

3. Type a password if you have set one, and then click . The default password is initpass.
4. Click the **Network** tab.
5. Do one of the following:

| Option           | Description                                                               |
|------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Wired network    | Click <b>Wired</b> , and then select <b>Wired 802.1x Authentication</b> . |
| Wireless network | Click <b>Wireless</b> , and then select <b>Wireless (Enterprise)</b> .    |

6. Configure the IEEE 802.1x authentication settings.



- To enable IEEE 802.1x authentication for wired networks, select **Enabled** for **Wired 802.1x status** on the **Wired 802.1x Authentication** page.
- If you are using **EAP-TLS** authentication, you must select the client certificate that has been installed (shown with certificate name) for verification from the **Client Certificate** drop-down list.
- If you select **EAP-FAST**, **PEAP**, **EAP-TTLS**, or **EAP-TLS** authentication, select the verification method from the **Server Certificate Verification** drop-down list. Verify the server certificate using the CA certificate, imported to the machine in advance, that has been issued by the CA that signed the server certificate.

Select one of the following verification methods from the **Server Certificate Verification** drop-down list:

| Option                     | Description                                                                                                                                                                |
|----------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>No Verification</b>     | The server certificate can always be trusted. The verification is not performed.                                                                                           |
| <b>CA Cert.</b>            | The verification method to check the CA reliability of the server certificate, using the CA certificate that has been issued by the CA that signed the server certificate. |
| <b>CA Cert. + ServerID</b> | The verification method to check the common name <sup>1</sup> value of the server certificate, in addition to the CA reliability of the server certificate.                |

7. When finished with configuration, click **Submit**.

For wired networks: After configuring, connect your machine to the IEEE 802.1x supported network. After a few minutes, print the Network Configuration Report to check the **<Wired IEEE 802.1x>** Status.

| Option         | Description                                                                      |
|----------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Success</b> | The wired IEEE 802.1x function is enabled and the authentication was successful. |
| <b>Failed</b>  | The wired IEEE 802.1x function is enabled; however, the authentication failed.   |
| <b>Off</b>     | The wired IEEE 802.1x function is not available.                                 |



### Related Information

- [Use IEEE 802.1x Authentication for a Wired or a Wireless Network](#)

<sup>1</sup> The common name verification compares the common name of the server certificate to the character string configured for the **Server ID**. Before you use this method, contact your system administrator about the server certificate's common name and then configure **Server ID**.

## IEEE 802.1x Authentication Methods

### LEAP (Wireless network)

Lightweight Extensible Authentication Protocol (LEAP) is a proprietary EAP method developed by Cisco Systems, Inc., which uses a user ID and password for authentication.

### EAP-FAST

Extensible Authentication Protocol-Flexible Authentication via Secured Tunneling (EAP-FAST) has been developed by Cisco Systems, Inc., which uses a user ID and password for authentication, and symmetric key algorithms to achieve a tunnelled authentication process.

This machine supports the following inner authentication methods:

- EAP-FAST/NONE
- EAP-FAST/MS-CHAPv2
- EAP-FAST/GTC

### PEAP

Protected Extensible Authentication Protocol (PEAP) is a version of EAP method developed by Cisco Systems, Inc., Microsoft Corporation and RSA Security. PEAP creates an encrypted Secure Sockets Layer (SSL)/Transport Layer Security (TLS) tunnel between a client and an authentication server, for sending a user ID and password. PEAP provides mutual authentication between the server and the client.

This machine supports the following inner authentications:

- PEAP/MS-CHAPv2
- PEAP/GTC

### EAP-TTLS

Extensible Authentication Protocol-Tunneled Transport Layer Security (EAP-TTLS) has been developed by Funk Software and Certicom. EAP-TTLS creates a similar encrypted SSL tunnel to PEAP, between a client and an authentication server, for sending a user ID and password. EAP-TTLS provides mutual authentication between the server and the client.

This machine supports the following inner authentications:

- EAP-TTLS/CHAP
- EAP-TTLS/MS-CHAP
- EAP-TTLS/MS-CHAPv2
- EAP-TTLS/PAP

### EAP-TLS

Extensible Authentication Protocol-Transport Layer Security (EAP-TLS) requires digital certificate authentication both at a client and an authentication server.



### Related Information

- [Use IEEE 802.1x Authentication for a Wired or a Wireless Network](#)

## Store Print Log to Network

- [Store Log to Network Overview](#)
- [Configure the Store Print Log to Network Settings Using Web Based Management](#)
- [Use the Store Print Log to Network's Error Detection Setting](#)

## Store Log to Network Overview

The Store Print Log to Network feature allows you to save the print log file from your machine to a network server using the Common Internet File System (CIFS) protocol. You can record the ID, type of print job, job name, user name, date, time and the number of printed pages for every print job. CIFS is a protocol that runs over TCP/IP, allowing computers on a network to share files over an intranet or the Internet.

The following print functions are recorded in the print log:

- Print jobs from your computer



- The Store Print Log to Network feature supports Kerberos authentication and NTLMv2 authentication. You must configure the SNTP protocol (network time server) for Authentication.
- You can set the file type to TXT or CSV when storing a file to the server.



### Related Information

- [Store Print Log to Network](#)

## Configure the Store Print Log to Network Settings Using Web Based Management

1. Start your web browser.
2. Type "http://machine's IP address" in your browser's address bar (where "machine's IP address" is the machine's IP address).  
For example:  
http://192.168.1.2
3. Type a password if you have set one, and then click . The default password is initpass.
4. Click the **Administrator** tab.
5. Click the **Store Print Log to Network** menu.
6. In the **Print Log** field, click **On**.
7. Configure the following settings:

| Option                                     | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
|--------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Network Folder Path</b>                 | Type the destination folder where your log will be stored on the CIFS server (for example: share\abc).                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| <b>File Name</b>                           | Type the file name you want to use for the print log (up to 32 characters).                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| <b>File Type</b>                           | Select the <b>TXT</b> or <b>CSV</b> option for the Print Log file type.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| <b>Auth. Method</b>                        | <p>Select the authentication method required for access to the CIFS server: <b>Auto</b>, <b>Kerberos</b>, or <b>NTLMv2</b>. Kerberos is an authentication protocol which allows devices or individuals to securely prove their identity to network servers using a single sign-on. NTLMv2 is the authentication method used by Windows to log into servers.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• <b>Auto</b>: If you select <b>Auto</b>, NTLMv2 will be used to the authentication method.</li><li>• <b>Kerberos</b>: Select the <b>Kerberos</b> option to use Kerberos authentication only.</li><li>• <b>NTLMv2</b>: Select the <b>NTLMv2</b> option to use NTLMv2 authentication only.</li></ul> <p> For the <b>Kerberos</b> and <b>NTLMv2</b> authentication, you must also configure the SNTP protocol (network time server) and DNS server.</p> |
| <b>Username</b>                            | <p>Type the user name for the authentication (up to 96 characters).</p> <p> If the user name is part of a domain, enter the user name in one of the following styles: user@domain or domain\user.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| <b>Password</b>                            | Type the password for the authentication (up to 32 characters).                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| <b>Kerberos Server Address</b> (if needed) | Type the KDC host address (for example: kerberos.example.com; up to 64 characters) or the IP address (for example: 192.168.56.189).                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| <b>Error Detection Setting</b>             | Choose what action should be taken when the Print Log cannot be stored to the server due to a network error.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |

8. In the **Connection Status** field, confirm the last log status.



You can also confirm the error status on the LCD of your machine.

9. Click **Submit** to display the **Test Print Log to Network** page.

---

To test your settings, click **Yes** and then go to the next step.

To skip the test, click **No**. Your settings will be submitted automatically.

10. The machine will test your settings.

11. If your settings are accepted, **Test OK** appears on the screen.

If **Test Error** appears, check all settings, and then click **Submit** to display the Test page again.



### Related Information

- [Store Print Log to Network](#)



## Use the Store Print Log to Network's Error Detection Setting

Use Error Detection Settings to determine the action that is taken when the print log cannot be stored to the server due to a network error.

1. Start your web browser.
2. Type "http://machine's IP address" in your browser's address bar (where "machine's IP address" is the machine's IP address).  
For example:  
http://192.168.1.2
3. Click the **Administrator** tab.
4. Click the **Store Print Log to Network** menu in the left navigation bar.
5. In the **Error Detection Setting** section, select the **Cancel Print** or **Ignore Log & Print** option.

| Option             | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
|--------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Cancel Print       | If you select the <b>Cancel Print</b> option, the print jobs are cancelled when the print log cannot be stored to the server.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| Ignore Log & Print | If you select the <b>Ignore Log &amp; Print</b> option, the machine prints the documentation even if the print log cannot be stored to the server.<br>When the store print log function has recovered, the print log is recorded as follows: <div> <pre> Id, Type, Job Name, User Name, Date, Time, Print Pages 1, Print(xxxxxxx), "Document01.doc", "user01", 03/03/20xx, 14:01:32, 52 2, Print(xxxxxxx), "Document02.doc", "user01", 03/03/20xx, 14:45:30, ? 3, &lt;ERROR&gt;, ?, ?, ?, ?, ? 4, Print(xxxxxxx), "Report01.xls", "user02", 03/03/20xx, 19:30:40, 4                     </pre> <div> <div>a</div> <div>b</div> </div> </div> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. If the log cannot be stored at the end of printing, the print log except the number of printed pages will be recorded.</li> <li>b. If the print log cannot be stored at the beginning and the end of printing, the print log of the job will not be recorded. When the function has recovered, the error is reflected in the log.</li> </ol> |

6. Click **Submit** to display the **Test Print Log to Network** page.  
To test your settings, click **Yes** and then go to the next step.  
To skip the test, click **No**. Your settings will be submitted automatically.
7. The machine will test your settings.
8. If your settings are accepted, **Test OK** appears on the screen.  
If **Test Error** appears, check all settings, and then click **Submit** to display the Test page again.

### Related Information

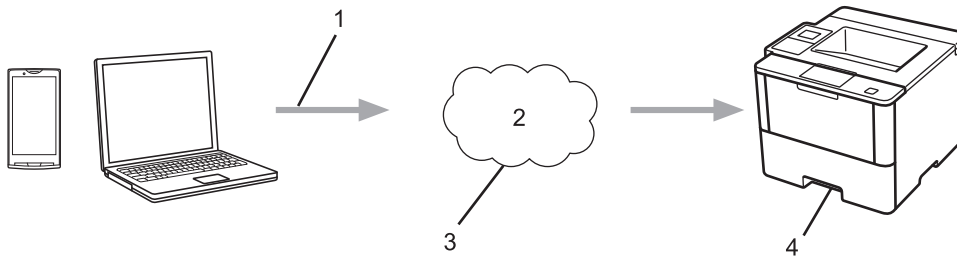
- [Store Print Log to Network](#)

## Mobile/Web Connect

- [Print with Google Cloud Print™](#)
- [Print with Mopria™](#)
- [Print from a Mobile Device](#)

## Print with Google Cloud Print™

Google Cloud Print™ is a Google-provided service that allows you to print to a printer registered to your Google account using a network-compatible device (such as a mobile phone or computer) without installing the printer driver on the device.



1. Print request
2. Internet
3. Google Cloud Print™
4. Printing

For more detailed information, see the *Google Cloud Print Guide*.

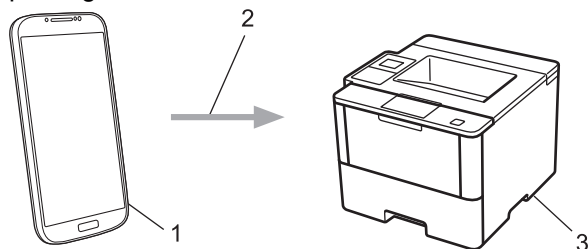


### Related Information

- [Mobile/Web Connect](#)

## Print with Mopria™

Mopria™ Print Service is a print feature on Android™ mobile devices (Android™ version 4.4 or later) developed by the Mopria™ Alliance. With this service, you can connect to the same network as your machine and print without additional setup. Many native Android™ apps, including Google Chrome™, Gmail, and Gallery, support printing.



1. Android™ 4.4 or later
2. Wi-Fi® Connection
3. Your machine

You must download the Mopria™ Print Service from the Google Play™ Store and install it on your Android™ device. Be sure to turn the service on before using this feature.



### Related Information

- [Mobile/Web Connect](#)

## Print from a Mobile Device

Use Konica Minolta Mobile Print to print from various mobile devices.

- For Android™ Devices

Konica Minolta Mobile Print allows you to use features of your machine directly from your Android™ device, without using a computer.

Download and install Konica Minolta Mobile Print from the Google Play™ Store.

- For iOS Devices

Konica Minolta Mobile Print allows you to use features of your machine directly from your iPhone, iPod touch, iPad, and iPad mini.

Download and install Konica Minolta Mobile Print from the App Store.

- For Windows Phone Devices

Konica Minolta Mobile Print allows you to use features of your machine directly from your Windows Phone, without using a computer.

Download and install Konica Minolta Mobile Print from the Windows Phone Store (Windows Phone Marketplace).

For more detailed information, see help for Konica Minolta Mobile Print.



### Related Information

- [Mobile/Web Connect](#)
-

## Troubleshooting

Use this section to resolve typical problems you may encounter when using your machine. You can correct most problems yourself.

### IMPORTANT

For technical help, you must call customer service or your local dealer.

Using non-genuine supplies may affect the print quality, hardware performance, and machine reliability.

---

First, check the following:

- The machine's power cord is connected correctly and the machine's power is on.
- All of the protective materials have been removed.
- Paper is loaded correctly in the paper tray.
- The interface cables are securely connected to the machine and the computer, or the wireless connection is set up on both the machine and your computer.
- Error and maintenance messages

If you did not solve the problem with the checks, identify the problem and then see *Related Information*.



### Related Information

- [Error and Maintenance Messages](#)
  - [Paper Jams](#)
  - [Printing Problems](#)
  - [Improve the Print Quality](#)
  - [Network Problems](#)
  - [Other Problems](#)
  - [Check the Machine Information](#)
  - [Reset Functions](#)
-

## Error and Maintenance Messages

As with any sophisticated office product, errors may occur and supply items may have to be replaced. If this happens, your machine identifies the error or required routine maintenance and shows the appropriate message. The most common error and maintenance messages are shown in the table.

Follow the instructions in the **Action** column to solve the error and remove the message.

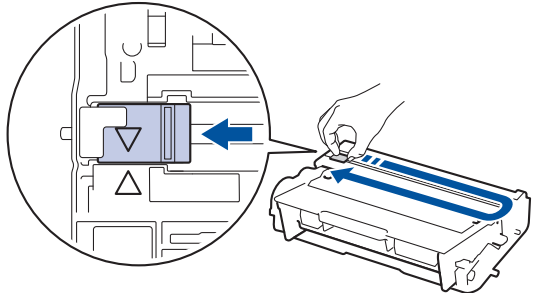
You can correct most errors and perform routine maintenance by yourself. If you need more tips: Contact customer support.

>> [bizhub 4000i](#)

>> [bizhub 5000i](#)

### bizhub 4000i

| Error Message    | Cause                                                                                                                                | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
|------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 2-sided Disabled | The back cover of the machine is not closed completely.                                                                              | Close the back cover of the machine until it locks in the closed position.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
|                  | The 2-sided tray is not installed completely.                                                                                        | Install the 2-sided tray firmly in the machine.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| Access Denied    | The function you want to use is restricted by Secure Function Lock 3.0.                                                              | Call your administrator to check your Secure Function Lock Settings.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| Cartridge Error  | The toner cartridge is not installed correctly.                                                                                      | Remove the toner cartridge and imaging unit assembly. Take out the toner cartridge, and put it back in the imaging unit again. Reinstall the toner cartridge and imaging unit assembly in the machine.<br><br>If the problem continues, contact customer support.                                                                                                                     |
| Cooling Down     | The temperature of the inside of the machine is too hot. The machine will pause its current print job and go into cooling down mode. | Make sure you can hear the fan in the machine spinning and that the exhaust outlet is not blocked.<br><br>If the fan is spinning, remove any obstacles that surround the exhaust outlet, and then leave the machine turned on but do not use it for several minutes.<br><br>If the fan is not spinning, disconnect the machine from the power for several minutes, then reconnect it. |
| Cover is Open    | The front cover is not completely closed.                                                                                            | Open and then firmly close the front cover of the machine.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| Cover is Open    | The fuser cover is not completely closed.                                                                                            | Close the fuser cover located inside the back cover of the machine.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |

| Error Message                                         | Cause                                                                                                       | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
|-------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Drum !                                                | The corona wire on the imaging unit must be cleaned.                                                        | <p>Clean the corona wire on the imaging unit.</p>  <p>See <i>Related Information: Clean the Corona Wire.</i></p> <p>If the problem continues, replace the imaging unit with a new one.</p> |
|                                                       | The imaging unit or the toner cartridge and imaging unit assembly is not installed correctly.               | Remove the imaging unit, remove the toner cartridge from the imaging unit, and put the toner cartridge back into the imaging unit. Reinstall the imaging unit in the machine.                                                                                                |
| Drum End Soon                                         | The imaging unit is near the end of its life.                                                               | Order a new imaging unit before the LCD displays <i>Replace Drum</i> .                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| Jam 2-sided                                           | The paper is jammed in the 2-sided tray or inside the back cover.                                           | Remove the 2-sided tray and open the back cover to pull out all jammed paper.                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| Jam Inside                                            | The paper is jammed inside the machine.                                                                     | Open the front cover, remove the toner cartridge and imaging unit assembly, and pull out all jammed paper. Close the front cover.                                                                                                                                            |
| Jam MP Tray                                           | The paper is jammed in the MP tray.                                                                         | Remove all jammed paper from in and around the MP tray. Press <b>Go</b> .                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| Jam Rear                                              | The paper is jammed in the back of the machine.                                                             | Open the fuser cover and remove all jammed paper. Close the fuser cover.                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| Jam Tray 1<br>Jam Tray 2<br>Jam Tray 3                | The paper is jammed in the indicated paper tray.                                                            | Pull out the paper tray indicated on the LCD and remove all jammed paper.                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| Limit Exceeded                                        | The print limit set in Secure Function Lock 3.0 was reached.                                                | Call your administrator to check your Secure Function Lock Settings.                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| Media Mismatch                                        | The media type specified in the printer driver differs from the paper type specified in the machine's menu. | Load the correct type of paper in the tray indicated on the LCD, and then select the correct media type in the Paper Type setting on the machine.                                                                                                                            |
| No Drum Unit                                          | The imaging unit is not installed correctly.                                                                | Reinstall the toner cartridge and imaging unit assembly.                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| No Paper                                              | The machine is out of paper, or paper is not loaded correctly in the paper tray.                            | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Refill paper in the paper tray. Make sure the paper guides are set to the correct size.</li> <li>• If paper is in the tray, remove it and load it again. Make sure the paper guides are set to the correct size.</li> </ul>         |
| No Paper Fed T1<br>No Paper Fed T2<br>No Paper Fed T3 | The machine failed to feed paper from the indicated paper tray.                                             | Pull out the paper tray indicated on the LCD and remove all jammed paper.                                                                                                                                                                                                    |

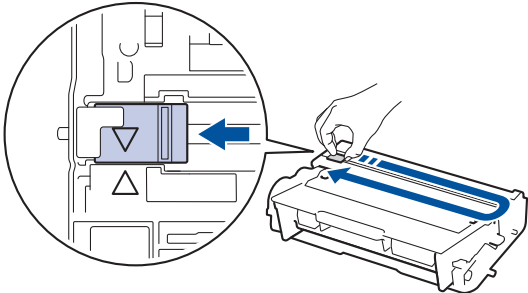


| Error Message                             | Cause                                                                                                 | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
|-------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| No Paper MP                               | The MP tray is out of paper, or paper is not loaded correctly in the MP tray.                         | Do one of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Refill paper in the MP tray. Make sure the paper guides are set to the correct size.</li> <li>If paper is in the tray, remove it and load it again. Make sure the paper guides are set to the correct size.</li> </ul>                                 |
| No Paper T1<br>No Paper T2<br>No Paper T3 | The machine failed to feed paper from the indicated paper tray.                                       | Do one of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Refill paper in the paper tray indicated on the LCD. Make sure the paper guides are set to the correct size.</li> <li>If paper is in the tray, remove it and load it again. Make sure the paper guides are set to the correct size.</li> </ul>         |
| No Toner                                  | The toner cartridge or the toner cartridge and imaging unit assembly is not installed correctly.      | Remove the toner cartridge and imaging unit assembly. Remove the toner cartridge from the imaging unit, and reinstall the toner cartridge back in the imaging unit. Reinstall the toner cartridge and imaging unit assembly back in the machine. If the problem continues, replace the toner cartridge with a new one. |
| No Tray T1<br>No Tray T2<br>No Tray T3    | The paper tray is not installed or not installed correctly.                                           | Reinstall the paper tray indicated on the LCD.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| Out of Memory                             | The machine's memory is full.                                                                         | Press <b>Cancel</b> and reduce the print resolution.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| Print Data Full                           | The machine's memory is full.                                                                         | Press <b>Cancel</b> and delete the previously stored secure print data.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| Print Unable ##                           | The machine has a mechanical problem.                                                                 | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Press and hold  to turn the machine off, wait a few minutes, and then turn it on again.</li> <li>If the problem continues, contact customer support.</li> </ul>                            |
| Replace Drum                              | It is time to replace the imaging unit.                                                               | Replace the imaging unit with a new one.<br><i>See Related Information: Replace the Imaging Unit.</i>                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
|                                           | The imaging unit counter was not reset when a new imaging unit was installed.                         | Reset the imaging unit counter.<br>See the instructions included with the new imaging unit.                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| Replace Toner                             | The toner cartridge is at the end of its life. The machine stops all print operations.                | Replace the toner cartridge with a new one.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| Self-Diagnostic                           | The temperature of the fuser unit does not rise to a specified temperature within the specified time. | Press and hold  to turn the machine off, wait a few seconds, and then turn it on again. Leave the machine idle for 15 minutes with the power on.                                                                                  |
|                                           | The fuser unit is too hot.                                                                            |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| Size Error                                | The paper size defined in the printer driver is not supported by the defined tray.                    | Choose a paper size supported by the defined tray.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |

| Error Message  | Cause                                                                                                         | Action                                                                                                                                                                       |
|----------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Size Error DX  | The paper size specified in the machine's paper size setting is not available for automatic 2-sided printing. | Press <b>Cancel</b> (if required).<br>Load the correct size of paper in the tray and set the tray for that paper size.<br>Choose a paper size supported by 2-sided printing. |
|                | The paper in the tray is not the correct size and is not available for automatic 2-sided printing.            | Paper size available for automatic 2-sided printing is A4.                                                                                                                   |
| Size Mismatch  | The paper in the tray is not the correct size.                                                                | Load the correct size of paper in the tray indicated on the LCD and set the size of paper for the tray. Press <b>Go</b> .                                                    |
| Toner Low      | If the LCD displays this message, you can still print. The toner cartridge is near the end of its life.       | Order a new toner cartridge now so you have it ready when the LCD displays <b>Replace Toner</b> .                                                                            |
| Too Many Trays | The number of installed Optional Trays exceeds the maximum number.                                            | Reduce the number of Optional Trays.                                                                                                                                         |

## bizhub 5000i

| Error Message    | Cause                                                                                                                                | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
|------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 2-sided Disabled | The back cover of the machine is not closed completely.                                                                              | Close the back cover of the machine until it locks in the closed position.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
|                  | The 2-sided tray is not installed completely.                                                                                        | Install the 2-sided tray firmly in the machine.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| Access Denied    | The function you want to use is restricted by Secure Function Lock 3.0.                                                              | Call your administrator to check your Secure Function Lock Settings.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| Cartridge Error  | The toner cartridge is not installed correctly.                                                                                      | Remove the toner cartridge and imaging unit assembly. Take out the toner cartridge, and put it back in the imaging unit again. Reinstall the toner cartridge and imaging unit assembly in the machine.<br><br>If the problem continues, contact customer support.                                                                                                                     |
| Cooling Down     | The temperature of the inside of the machine is too hot. The machine will pause its current print job and go into cooling down mode. | Make sure you can hear the fan in the machine spinning and that the exhaust outlet is not blocked.<br><br>If the fan is spinning, remove any obstacles that surround the exhaust outlet, and then leave the machine turned on but do not use it for several minutes.<br><br>If the fan is not spinning, disconnect the machine from the power for several minutes, then reconnect it. |
| Cover is Open    | The front cover is not completely closed.                                                                                            | Open and then firmly close the front cover of the machine.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| Cover is Open    | The fuser cover is not completely closed.                                                                                            | Close the fuser cover located inside the back cover of the machine.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |

| Error Message                                                            | Cause                                                                                                       | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Drum !                                                                   | The corona wire on the imaging unit must be cleaned.                                                        | <p>Clean the corona wire on the imaging unit.</p>  <p>See <i>Related Information: Clean the Corona Wire.</i></p> <p>If the problem continues, replace the imaging unit with a new one.</p> |
|                                                                          | The imaging unit or the toner cartridge and imaging unit assembly is not installed correctly.               | Remove the imaging unit, remove the toner cartridge from the imaging unit, and put the toner cartridge back into the imaging unit. Reinstall the imaging unit in the machine.                                                                                                |
| Jam 2-sided                                                              | The paper is jammed in the 2-sided tray or inside the back cover.                                           | Remove the 2-sided tray and open the back cover to pull out all jammed paper.                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| Jam Inside                                                               | The paper is jammed inside the machine.                                                                     | Open the front cover, remove the toner cartridge and imaging unit assembly, and pull out all jammed paper. Close the front cover.                                                                                                                                            |
| Jam MP Tray                                                              | The paper is jammed in the MP tray.                                                                         | Remove all jammed paper from in and around the MP tray. Press <b>Retry</b> .                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| Jam Rear                                                                 | The paper is jammed in the back of the machine.                                                             | Open the fuser cover and remove all jammed paper. Close the fuser cover.                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| Jam Tray<br>Jam Tray1<br>Jam Tray2<br>Jam Tray3<br>Jam Tray4             | The paper is jammed in the indicated paper tray.                                                            | Pull out the paper tray and remove all jammed paper as shown in the animation on the LCD.                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| Limit Exceeded                                                           | The print limit set in Secure Function Lock 3.0 was reached.                                                | Call your administrator to check your Secure Function Lock Settings.                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| Media Type Mismatch                                                      | The media type specified in the printer driver differs from the paper type specified in the machine's menu. | Load the correct type of paper in the tray indicated on the LCD, and then select the correct media type in the Paper Type setting on the machine.                                                                                                                            |
| No Drum Unit                                                             | The imaging unit is not installed correctly.                                                                | Reinstall the toner cartridge and imaging unit assembly.                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| No HUB Support                                                           | A USB hub device is connected to the USB host connector.                                                    | Disconnect the USB hub device from the USB host connector.                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| No Paper                                                                 | The machine is out of paper, or paper is not loaded correctly in the paper tray.                            | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Refill paper in the paper tray. Make sure the paper guides are set to the correct size.</li> <li>If paper is in the tray, remove it and load it again. Make sure the paper guides are set to the correct size.</li> </ul>             |
| No Paper Fed T1<br>No Paper Fed T2<br>No Paper Fed T3<br>No Paper Fed T4 | The machine failed to feed paper from the indicated paper tray.                                             | Pull out the paper tray indicated on the LCD and remove all jammed paper.                                                                                                                                                                                                    |

| Error Message                                                                             | Cause                                                                                            | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| No Paper MP                                                                               | The MP tray is out of paper, or paper is not loaded correctly in the MP tray.                    | Do one of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Refill paper in the MP tray. Make sure the paper guides are set to the correct size.</li> <li>If paper is in the tray, remove it and load it again. Make sure the paper guides are set to the correct size.</li> </ul>                                 |
| No Paper T1<br>No Paper T2<br>No Paper T3<br>No Paper T4                                  | The machine failed to feed paper from the indicated paper tray.                                  | Do one of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Refill paper in the paper tray indicated on the LCD. Make sure the paper guides are set to the correct size.</li> <li>If paper is in the tray, remove it and load it again. Make sure the paper guides are set to the correct size.</li> </ul>         |
| No Toner                                                                                  | The toner cartridge or the toner cartridge and imaging unit assembly is not installed correctly. | Remove the toner cartridge and imaging unit assembly. Remove the toner cartridge from the imaging unit, and reinstall the toner cartridge back in the imaging unit. Reinstall the toner cartridge and imaging unit assembly back in the machine. If the problem continues, replace the toner cartridge with a new one. |
| No Tray T1<br>No Tray T2<br>No Tray T3<br>No Tray T4                                      | The paper tray is not installed or not installed correctly.                                      | Reinstall the paper tray indicated on the LCD.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| Out of Memory                                                                             | The machine's memory is full.                                                                    | Press  and reduce the print resolution.                                                                                                                                                                                           |
| Output Tray Full                                                                          | The output paper tray is full.                                                                   | Remove printed paper from output tray indicated on the LCD.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| Paper Low<br>Paper Low Tray 1<br>Paper Low Tray 2<br>Paper Low Tray 3<br>Paper Low Tray 4 | The paper tray is nearly empty.                                                                  | Refill the paper in the paper tray indicated on the LCD.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| Print Data Full                                                                           | The machine's memory is full.                                                                    | Press  and delete the previously stored secure print data.                                                                                                                                                                        |
| Print Unable ##                                                                           | The machine has a mechanical problem.                                                            | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Press and hold  to turn the machine off, wait a few minutes, and then turn it on again.</li> <li>If the problem continues, contact customer support.</li> </ul>                            |
| Replace Toner                                                                             | The toner cartridge is at the end of its life. The machine stops all print operations.           | Replace the toner cartridge with a new one.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| Screen Init. Fail                                                                         | The touchscreen was pressed before the power on initialisation was completed.                    | Make sure nothing is touching the touchscreen.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
|                                                                                           | Debris may be stuck between the lower part of the touchscreen and its frame.                     | Insert a piece of stiff paper between the lower part of the touchscreen and its frame and slide it back and forth to push out any debris.                                                                                                                                                                              |

| Error Message             | Cause                                                                                                         | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
|---------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Self-Diagnostic           | The temperature of the fuser unit does not rise to a specified temperature within the specified time.         | Press and hold  to turn the machine off, wait a few seconds, and then turn it on again. Leave the machine idle for 15 minutes with the power on. |
|                           | The fuser unit is too hot.                                                                                    |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| Size Error                | The paper size defined in the printer driver is not supported by the defined tray.                            | Choose a paper size supported by the defined tray.                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| Size Error 2-sided        | The paper size specified in the machine's paper size setting is not available for automatic 2-sided printing. | Press  (if required).<br>Load the correct size of paper in the tray and set the tray for that paper size.                                        |
|                           | The paper in the tray is not the correct size and is not available for automatic 2-sided printing.            | Choose a paper size supported by 2-sided printing.<br>Paper size available for automatic 2-sided printing is A4.                                                                                                                    |
| Size Mismatch             | The paper in the tray is not the correct size.                                                                | Load the correct size of paper in the tray indicated on the LCD and set the size of paper for the tray. Press <i>Retry</i> .                                                                                                        |
| Supplies<br>Drum End Soon | The imaging unit is near the end of its life.                                                                 | Order a new imaging unit before the LCD displays <i>Replace Drum</i> .                                                                                                                                                              |
| Supplies<br>Replace Drum  | It is time to replace the imaging unit.                                                                       | Replace the imaging unit with a new one.<br>See <i>Related Information: Replace the Imaging Unit</i> .                                                                                                                              |
|                           | The imaging unit counter was not reset when a new imaging unit was installed.                                 | Reset the imaging unit counter.<br>See the instructions included with the new imaging unit.                                                                                                                                         |
| Supplies<br>Toner Low     | If the LCD displays this message, you can still print. The toner cartridge is near the end of its life.       | Order a new toner cartridge now so you have it ready when the LCD displays <i>Replace Toner</i> .                                                                                                                                   |
| Too Many Trays            | The number of installed Optional Trays exceeds the maximum number.                                            | Reduce the number of Optional Trays.                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| Unusable Device           | An unsupported USB device has been connected to the USB host connector.                                       | Unplug the device from the USB host connector.                                                                                                                                                                                      |



## Related Information

- [Troubleshooting](#)

### Related Topics:

- [Replace Supplies](#)
- [Load and Print Using the Paper Tray](#)
- [Load and Print Using the Multi-purpose Tray \(MP Tray\)](#)
- [Replace the Imaging Unit](#)
- [Clean the Corona Wire](#)

## Paper Jams

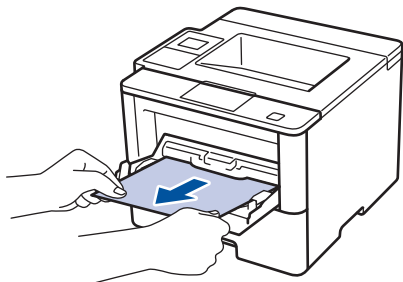
Always remove the remaining paper from the paper tray and straighten the stack when you are adding new paper. This helps prevent multiple sheets of paper from feeding through the machine at one time and prevents paper jams.

- [Paper is Jammed in the MP tray](#)
- [Paper is Jammed in the Paper Tray](#)
- [Paper is Jammed in the Back of the Machine](#)
- [Paper is Jammed inside the Machine](#)
- [Paper is Jammed in the 2-sided Tray](#)

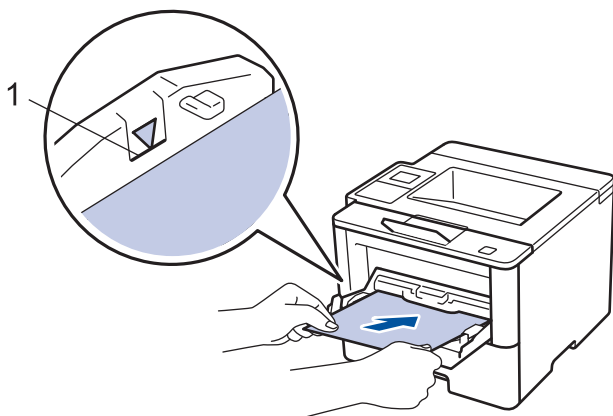
## Paper is Jammed in the MP tray

If the machine's control panel indicates that there is a jam in the machine's MP tray, follow these steps:

1. Remove the paper from the MP tray.
2. Remove any jammed paper from in and around the MP tray.



3. Fan the paper stack, and then put it back in the MP tray.
4. Reload paper in the MP tray and make sure the paper stays under the maximum paper height guides (1) on both sides of the tray.



5. Do one of the following:
  - (bizhub 4000i)  
Press **Go** to resume printing.
  - (bizhub 5000i)  
Press [Retry] to resume printing.



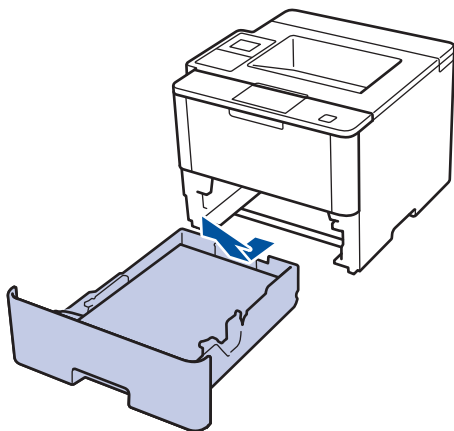
### Related Information

- [Paper Jams](#)

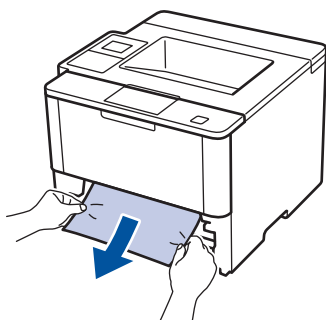
## Paper is Jammed in the Paper Tray

If the machine's control panel indicates that there is a jam in the paper tray, follow these steps:

1. Pull the paper tray completely out of the machine.

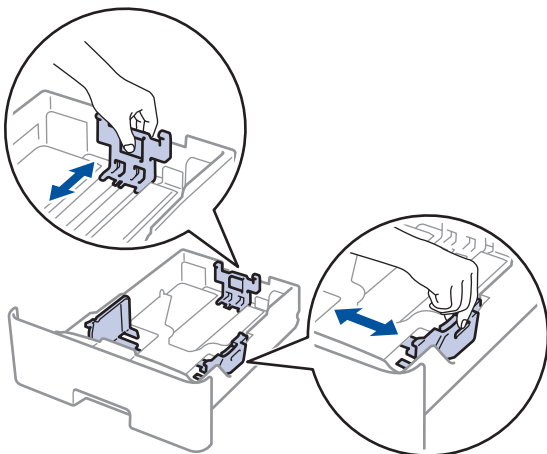


2. Slowly pull out the jammed paper.



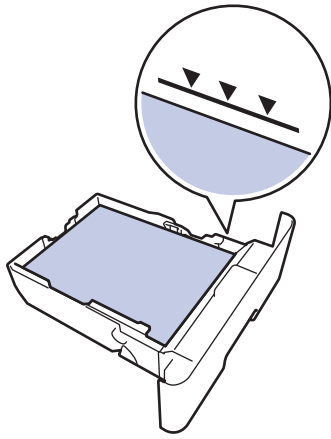
Pulling the jammed paper downward using both hands allows you to remove the paper more easily.

3. Fan the stack of paper to prevent further jams, and slide the paper guides to fit the paper size.



4. Make sure the paper is below the maximum paper mark (▼▼▼).





5. Put the paper tray firmly back in the machine.



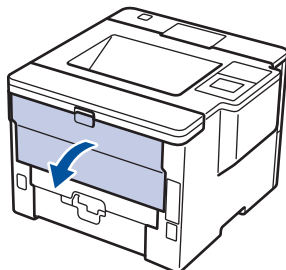
### Related Information

- [Paper Jams](#)
-

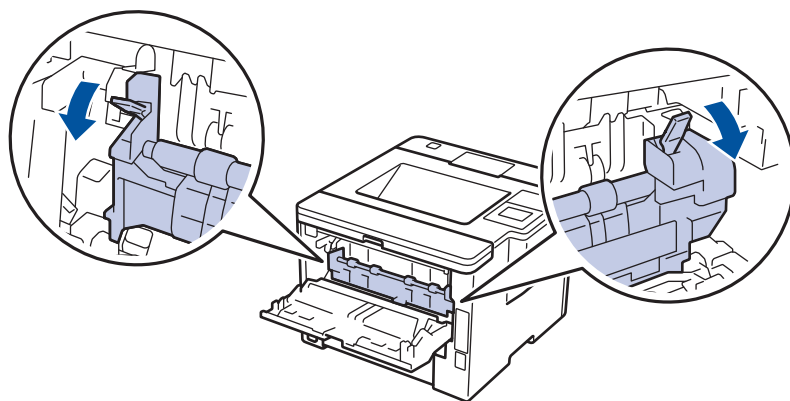
## Paper is Jammed in the Back of the Machine

If the machine's control panel indicates that there is a jam in the back (Rear) of the machine, follow these steps:

1. Leave the machine turned on for 10 minutes for the internal fan to cool the extremely hot parts inside the machine.
2. Open the back cover.



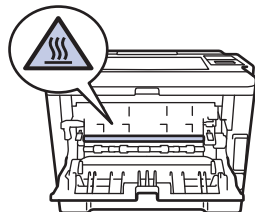
3. Pull the levers at the left and right sides toward you to release the fuser cover.



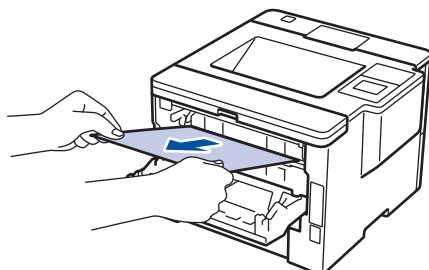
### WARNING

#### HOT SURFACE

The machine's internal parts will be extremely hot. Wait for the machine to cool down before touching them.

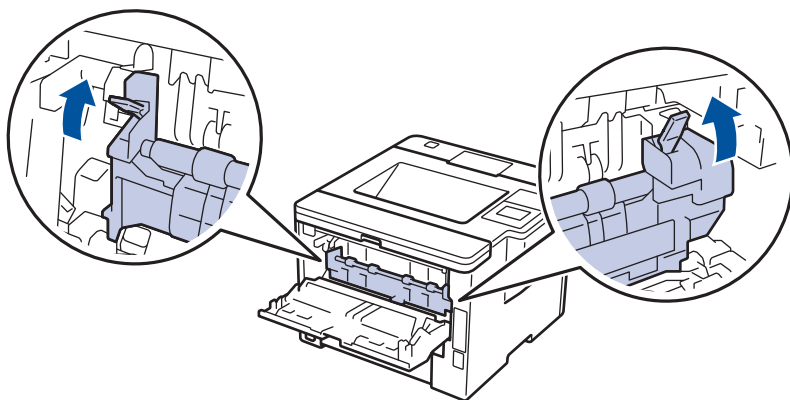


4. Use both hands to gently pull the jammed paper out of the fuser unit.



---

5. Close the fuser cover.



6. Close the back cover until it locks in the closed position.



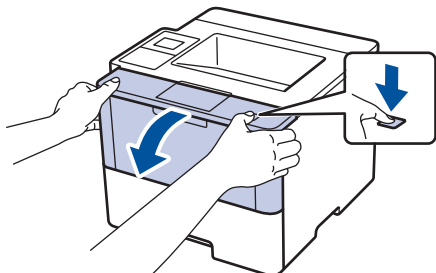
### **Related Information**

- [Paper Jams](#)
-

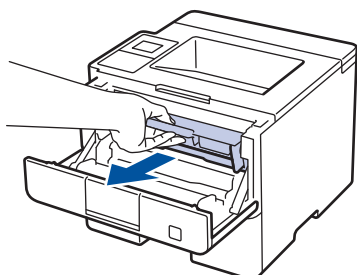
## Paper is Jammed inside the Machine

If the machine's control panel indicates that there is a jam inside the machine, follow these steps:

1. Leave the machine turned on for 10 minutes for the internal fan to cool the extremely hot parts inside the machine.
2. Open the front cover.



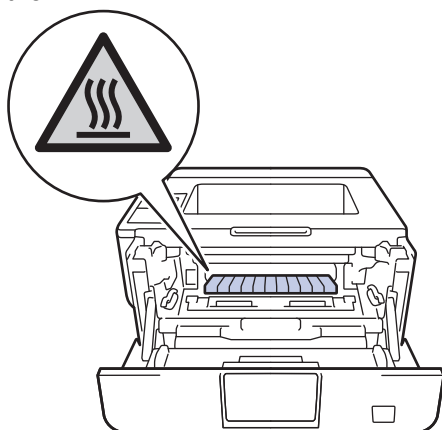
3. Remove the toner cartridge and imaging unit assembly.



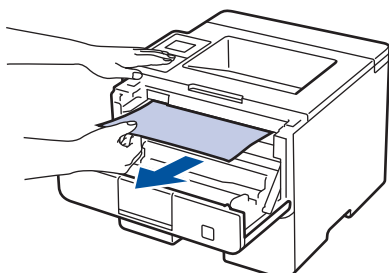
### **WARNING**

#### HOT SURFACE

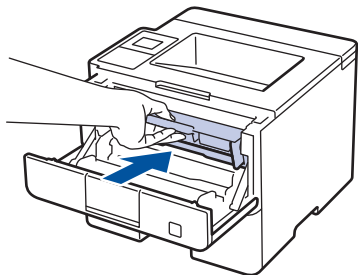
The machine's internal parts will be extremely hot. Wait for the machine to cool down before touching them.



4. Pull out the jammed paper slowly.



5. Install the toner cartridge and imaging unit assembly into the machine.



6. Close the front cover.



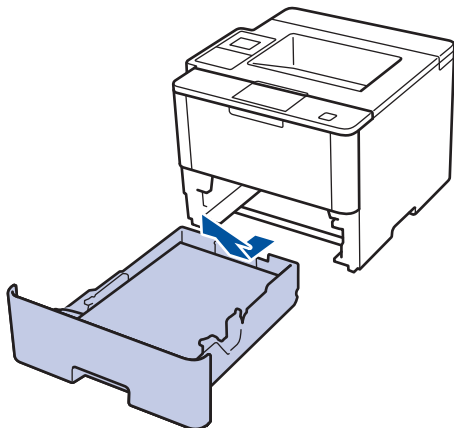
## Related Information

- [Paper Jams](#)

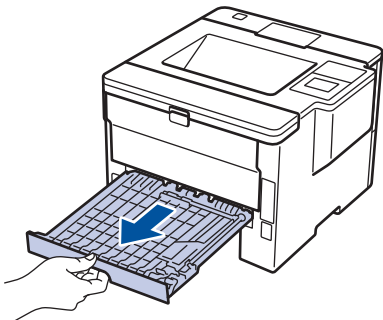
## Paper is Jammed in the 2-sided Tray

If the machine's control panel indicates that there is a jam in the 2-sided paper tray, follow these steps:

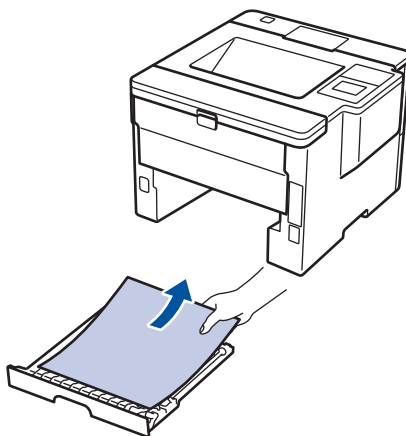
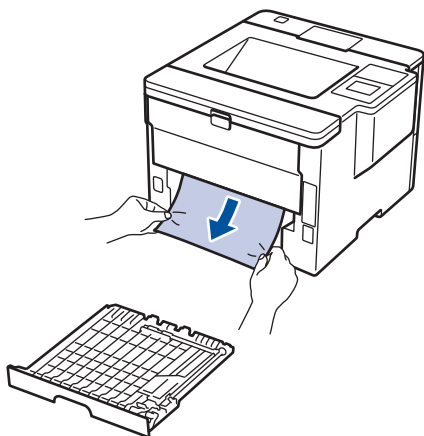
1. Leave the machine turned on for 10 minutes for the internal fan to cool the extremely hot parts inside the machine.
2. Pull the paper tray completely out of the machine.



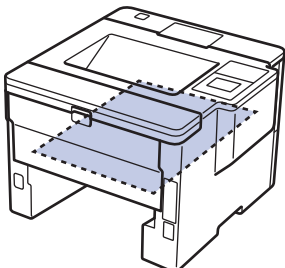
3. At the back of the machine, pull the 2-sided tray completely out of the machine.



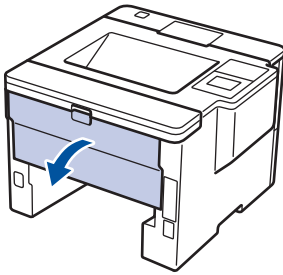
4. Pull the jammed paper out of the machine or out of the 2-sided tray.



5. Remove paper that may have jammed under the machine due to static electricity.



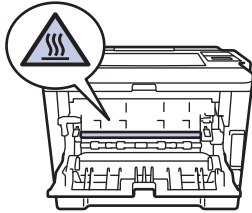
- 
6. If paper is not caught inside the 2-sided tray, open the back cover.



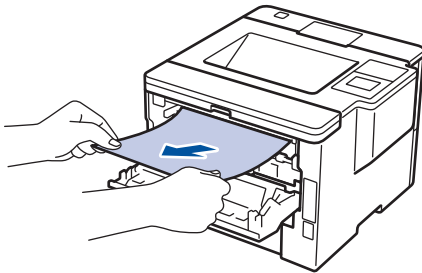
## **WARNING**

### **HOT SURFACE**

The machine's internal parts will be extremely hot. Wait for the machine to cool down before touching them.



- 
7. Use both hands to gently pull the jammed paper out of the back of the machine.



8. Close the back cover until it locks in the closed position.
9. Put the 2-sided tray firmly back in the rear of the machine.
10. Put the paper tray firmly back in the front of the machine.



## **Related Information**

- [Paper Jams](#)

## Printing Problems

| Difficulties                                         | Suggestions                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
|------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| No printout                                          | Check that the correct printer driver has been installed and selected.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
|                                                      | Check to see if the machine's control panel displays an error status.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
|                                                      | <p>Check that the machine is online:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Windows Server 2008<br/>Click /Start &gt; <b>Control Panel</b> &gt; <b>Hardware and Sound</b> &gt; <b>Printers</b>. Right-click <b>KONICA MINOLTA XXXX</b> (where XXXX is your model name). Make sure <b>Use Printer Online</b> is not listed. If it is listed, click this option to set the driver Online.</li> <li>Windows7 and Windows Server 2008 R2<br/>Click /Start &gt; <b>Devices and Printers</b> . Right-click <b>KONICA MINOLTA XXXX</b> (where XXXX is your model name) and click <b>See what's printing</b>. Click <b>Printer</b> in the menu bar. Make sure <b>Use Printer Offline</b> is not selected.</li> <li>Windows 8.1 and Windows Server 2012<br/>Move your mouse to the lower right corner of your desktop. When the menu bar appears, click <b>Settings</b> &gt; <b>Control Panel</b> &gt; <b>Hardware and Sound</b> &gt; <b>View devices and printers</b>. Right-click the <b>KONICA MINOLTA XXXX</b> (where XXXX is your model name). Click <b>See what's printing</b>. If printer driver options appear, select your printer driver. Click <b>Printer</b> in the menu bar and make sure that <b>Use Printer Offline</b> is not selected.</li> <li>Windows 10 and Windows Server 2016<br/>Click  &gt; <b>Windows System</b> &gt; <b>Control Panel</b>. In the <b>Hardware and Sound</b> group, click <b>View devices and printers</b>. Right-click the <b>KONICA MINOLTA XXXX</b> (where XXXX is your model name). Click <b>See what's printing</b>. If printer driver options appear, select your printer driver. Click <b>Printer</b> in the menu bar and make sure <b>Use Printer Offline</b> is not selected.</li> <li>Windows Server 2012 R2 and Windows Server 2019<br/>Click <b>Control Panel</b> on the <b>Start</b> screen. In the <b>Hardware</b> group, click <b>View devices and printers</b>. Right-click the <b>KONICA MINOLTA XXXX</b> (where XXXX is your model name). Click <b>See what's printing</b>. If printer driver options appear, select your printer driver. Click <b>Printer</b> in the menu bar and make sure <b>Use Printer Offline</b> is not selected.</li> </ul> |
|                                                      | <p>Check the machine is not in Power Off mode.</p> <p>If the machine is in Power Off mode, press  on the control panel, and then send the print data again.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
| The machine is not printing or has stopped printing. | <p>(bizhub 4000i) Press <b>Cancel</b>.</p> <p>(bizhub 5000i) Press .</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |



| Difficulties                                                                                                                                                             | Suggestions                                                                                                                                                                                               |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|                                                                                                                                                                          | The machine will cancel the print job and clear it from the machine's memory. The printout may be incomplete. Send the print data again.                                                                  |
| The machine prints unexpectedly or it prints garbage. The headers or footers appear when the document displays on the screen but they do not show up when it is printed. | There is an unprintable area on the top and bottom of the page. Adjust the top and bottom margins in your document to allow for this.                                                                     |
|                                                                                                                                                                          | (bizhub 4000i) Press <b>Cancel</b> .                                                                                                                                                                      |
|                                                                                                                                                                          | (bizhub 5000i) Press  .                                                                                                |
|                                                                                                                                                                          | Check the settings in your application to make sure they are set up to work with your machine.                                                                                                            |
| The machine prints the first couple of pages correctly, then some pages have missing text.                                                                               | Confirm that the printer driver is selected in your application's Print window.                                                                                                                           |
|                                                                                                                                                                          | Check the settings in your application to make sure they are set up to work with your machine.                                                                                                            |
| The machine does not print on both sides of the paper even though the printer driver setting is 2-sided and the machine supports automatic 2-sided printing.             | Your computer is not recognising the full signal of the machine's input buffer. Make sure you connected the interface cable correctly.                                                                    |
|                                                                                                                                                                          | Check the paper size setting in the printer driver. You must select A4 paper that is 60 to 105 g/m <sup>2</sup> .                                                                                         |
| Print speed is too slow.                                                                                                                                                 | Try changing the printer driver setting. The highest resolution needs longer data processing, sending and printing time.                                                                                  |
| The machine does not feed paper.                                                                                                                                         | If there is paper in the paper tray, make sure it is straight. If the paper is curled, straighten it. Sometimes it is helpful to remove the paper, turn the stack over and put it back in the paper tray. |
|                                                                                                                                                                          | Reduce the amount of paper in the paper tray, and then try again.                                                                                                                                         |
|                                                                                                                                                                          | Make sure <b>MP Tray</b> is not selected for <b>Paper Source</b> in the printer driver.                                                                                                                   |
|                                                                                                                                                                          | Clean the paper pick-up rollers.                                                                                                                                                                          |
| The machine does not feed paper from the MP tray.                                                                                                                        | Fan the paper well and put it back in the MP tray firmly.                                                                                                                                                 |
|                                                                                                                                                                          | Make sure <b>MP Tray</b> is selected as <b>Paper Source</b> in the printer driver.                                                                                                                        |
| The machine does not feed envelopes.                                                                                                                                     | Load envelopes in the MP tray. Your application must be set to print the envelope size you are using. This is usually done in the Page Setup or Document Setup menu of your application.                  |



## Related Information

- [Troubleshooting](#)

### Related Topics:

- [Cancel a Print Job](#)
- [Load and Print Using the Paper Tray](#)
- [Clean the Paper Pick-up Rollers](#)
- [Load and Print Using the Multi-purpose Tray \(MP Tray\)](#)

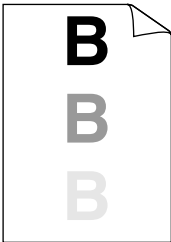
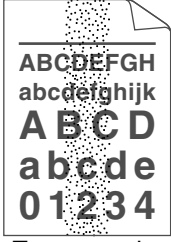
## Improve the Print Quality

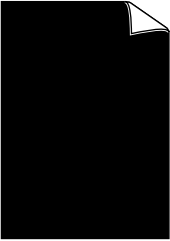
If you have a print quality problem, print a test page first. If the printout looks good, the problem is probably not the machine. Check the interface cable connections and try printing a different document. If the printout or test page printed from the machine has a quality problem, check the examples of poor print quality in the table and follow the recommendations.

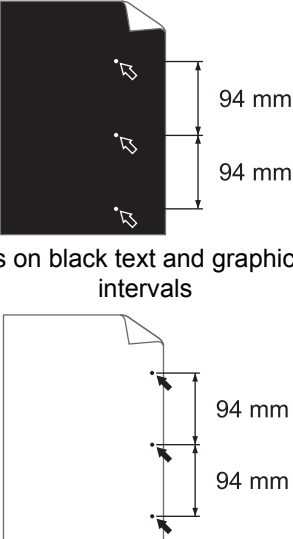
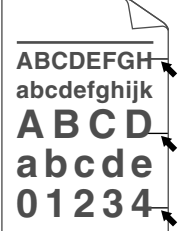
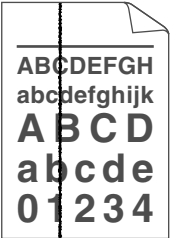
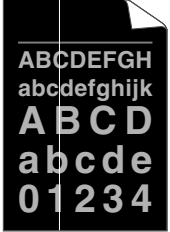
### IMPORTANT

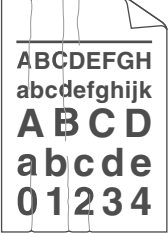
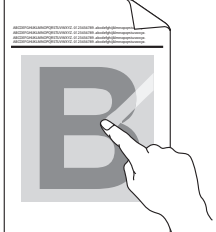
Using non-genuine supplies may affect the print quality, hardware performance, and machine reliability.

1. To get the best print quality, we suggest using recommended print media. Make sure you use paper that meets our specifications.
2. Check that the toner cartridge and imaging unit are installed correctly.

| Examples of poor print quality                                                                             | Recommendation                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  <p>Faint</p>             | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If the machine indicates Replace Toner status, install a new toner cartridge.</li> <li>• Check the machine's environment. Conditions such as humidity, high temperatures, and so on, may cause this print fault.</li> <li>• Clean the imaging unit.</li> <li>• Clean the corona wire on the imaging unit.</li> <li>• Replace the toner cartridge with a new toner cartridge.</li> <li>• Replace the imaging unit with a new imaging unit.</li> </ul>                                                                     |
|  <p>Grey background</p> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Check the machine's environment. Conditions such as high temperatures and high humidity can increase the amount of background shading.</li> <li>• Clean the imaging unit.</li> <li>• Replace the toner cartridge with a new toner cartridge.</li> <li>• Replace the imaging unit with a new imaging unit.</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
|  <p>Ghost</p>           | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Check the machine's environment. Conditions such as low humidity and low temperatures may cause this print quality problem.</li> <li>• Select the appropriate media type in the printer driver.</li> <li>• Select the appropriate media type in the menu setting.</li> <li>• Clean the imaging unit.</li> <li>• Replace the imaging unit with a new imaging unit.</li> <li>• Replace the toner cartridge with a new toner cartridge.</li> <li>• The fuser unit may be contaminated. Contact customer support.</li> </ul> |
|  <p>Toner specks</p>    | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Make sure the media type setting in the driver matches the type of paper you are using.</li> <li>• Clean the imaging unit.</li> <li>• The toner cartridge may be damaged. Replace the toner cartridge with a new toner cartridge.</li> <li>• The imaging unit may be damaged. Replace the imaging unit with a new imaging unit.</li> <li>• The fuser unit may be contaminated. Contact customer support.</li> </ul>                                                                                                      |

| Examples of poor print quality                                                                                                           | Recommendation                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  <p>Hollow print</p>                                    | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Select <b>Thick Paper</b> mode in the printer driver or use thinner paper than you are currently using.</li> <li>• Select the appropriate media type in the menu setting.</li> <li>• Check the machine's environment. Conditions such as high humidity can cause hollow print.</li> <li>• The imaging unit may be damaged.<br/>Replace the imaging unit with a new imaging unit.</li> </ul>                                               |
|  <p>All black</p>                                       | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Clean the corona wire inside the imaging unit.</li> <li>• The imaging unit may be damaged.<br/>Replace the imaging unit with a new imaging unit.</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
|  <p>White lines across the page</p>                     | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Select the appropriate media type in the printer driver.</li> <li>• Select the appropriate media type in the menu setting.</li> <li>• The problem may disappear by itself. Print multiple blank pages to clear this problem, especially if the machine has not been used for a long time.</li> <li>• Clean the imaging unit.</li> <li>• The imaging unit may be damaged.<br/>Replace the imaging unit with a new imaging unit.</li> </ul> |
|  <p>Lines across the page</p>                         | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Clean the imaging unit.</li> <li>• The imaging unit may be damaged.<br/>Replace the imaging unit with a new imaging unit.</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
|  <p>White lines, bands or ribbing across the page</p> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Check the machine's environment. Conditions such as high humidity and high temperatures may cause this print quality problem.</li> <li>• Clean the imaging unit.</li> <li>• If the problem is not solved after printing a few pages, replace the imaging unit with a new imaging unit.</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                         |

| Examples of poor print quality                                                                                                                                                           | Recommendation                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  <p>White Spots on black text and graphics at 94 mm intervals</p> <p>Black spots at 94 mm intervals</p> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>If the problem is not solved after printing a few pages, the imaging unit may have foreign material, such as glue from a label, stuck on the drum. Clean the imaging unit.<br/><i>See Related Information: Clean the Imaging Unit.</i></li> <li>The imaging unit may be damaged.<br/>Replace the imaging unit with a new imaging unit.</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
|  <p>Black toner marks across the page</p>                                                               | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>If you use label sheets for laser printers, the glue from the sheets may sometimes stick to the drum surface. Clean the imaging unit.<br/><i>See Related Information: Clean the Imaging Unit.</i></li> <li>If you used paper that has clips or staples, the imaging unit may be damaged.</li> <li>If the unpacked imaging unit is in direct sunlight (or room light for long periods of time), the unit may be damaged.</li> <li>Clean the imaging unit.</li> <li>The toner cartridge may be damaged.<br/>Replace the toner cartridge with a new toner cartridge.</li> <li>The imaging unit may be damaged.<br/>Replace the imaging unit with a new imaging unit.</li> </ul> |
|  <p>Black lines down the page</p> <p>Printed pages have toner stains down the page</p>                | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Clean the corona wire inside the imaging unit by sliding the tab.<br/>Make sure that the tab on the imaging unit is in the Home position.</li> <li>The toner cartridge may be damaged.<br/>Replace the toner cartridge with a new toner cartridge.</li> <li>The imaging unit may be damaged.<br/>Replace the imaging unit with a new imaging unit.</li> <li>The fuser unit may be contaminated.<br/>Contact customer support.</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
|  <p>White lines down the page</p>                                                                     | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Make sure foreign material such as a torn piece of paper, sticky notes or dust is not inside the machine and around the toner cartridge and imaging unit.</li> <li>The toner cartridge may be damaged.<br/>Replace the toner cartridge with a new toner cartridge.</li> <li>The imaging unit may be damaged.<br/>Replace the imaging unit with a new imaging unit.</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |

| Examples of poor print quality                                                                                | Recommendation                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  <p>Image skewed</p>         | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Make sure the paper or other print media is loaded correctly in the paper tray and the guides are not too tight or too loose against the paper stack.</li> <li>• Set the paper guides correctly.</li> <li>• The paper tray may be too full.</li> <li>• Check the paper type and quality.</li> <li>• Check for loose objects such as torn paper inside the machine.</li> <li>• If the problem only occurs during automatic 2-sided printing, check for torn paper in the 2-sided tray. Verify the 2-sided tray is inserted completely and the back cover is closed completely.</li> </ul> |
|  <p>Curled or wavy</p>       | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Check the paper type and quality. High temperatures and high humidity will cause paper to curl.</li> <li>• If you do not use the machine often, the paper may have been in the paper tray too long. Turn over the stack of paper in the paper tray. Also, fan the paper stack, and then rotate the paper 180° in the paper tray.</li> <li>• Open the back cover (face up output tray) to let the printed paper exit onto the face up output tray.</li> <li>• Choose <b>Reduce Paper Curl</b> mode in the printer driver when you do not use our recommended print media.</li> </ul>      |
|  <p>Wrinkles or creases</p> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Make sure paper is loaded correctly.</li> <li>• Check the paper type and quality.</li> <li>• Turn over the stack of paper in the tray or rotate the paper 180° in the input tray.</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
|  <p>Poor fixing</p>        | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Make sure the media type setting in the driver matches the type of paper you are using.</li> <li>• Choose <b>Improve Toner Fixing</b> mode in the printer driver.</li> </ul> <p>If this selection does not provide enough improvement, change the printer driver setting in <b>Media Type</b> to a thick setting. If you are printing an envelope, choose <b>Env. Thick</b> in the media type setting.</p>                                                                                                                                                                               |
|  <p>Envelope creases</p>   | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Make sure envelopes are printed with the back cover (face up output tray) opened.</li> <li>• Make sure envelopes are fed only from the MP tray.</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |



## Related Information

- [Troubleshooting](#)

---

**Related Topics:**

- [Test Print](#)
  - [Clean the Imaging Unit](#)
-

## Network Problems

- [Error Messages](#)
- [Where Can I Find My Machine's Network Settings?](#)
- [I Cannot Complete the Wireless Network Setup Configuration](#)
- [My Machine Cannot Print over the Network](#)
- [I Want to Check that My Network Devices are Working Correctly](#)

## Error Messages

Your machine will display an error message if an error occurs. The most common error messages are shown in the table.

>> bizhub 4000i

>> bizhub 5000i

### bizhub 4000i

| Error Messages                                    | Cause                                                                                                                                           | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
|---------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Authentication Error, contact your administrator. | Your authentication setting for the Store Print Log to Network feature is not correct.                                                          | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Make sure the <b>Username</b> and <b>Password</b> in <b>Authentication Setting</b> are correct. If the username is part of a domain, enter the username in one of the following styles: user@domain or domain\user.</li> <li>Make sure the SNTP time server settings are configured correctly so the time matches the time used for authentication by Kerberos or NTLMv2.</li> </ul>                                                                                                                              |
| Connection Error                                  | Other devices are trying to connect to the Wi-Fi Direct network at the same time.                                                               | Make sure there are no other devices trying to connect to the Wi-Fi Direct network, and then try to configure the Wi-Fi Direct settings again.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
| Connection Fail                                   | This machine and your mobile device cannot communicate during the Wi-Fi Direct network configuration.                                           | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Move the mobile device closer to your machine.</li> <li>Move your machine and the mobile device to an obstruction-free area.</li> <li>If you are using the PIN Method of WPS, make sure you have entered the correct PIN.</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| File Access Error, contact your administrator.    | This machine cannot access the destination folder for the Store Print Log to Network feature.                                                   | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Make sure the stored directory name is correct.</li> <li>Make sure the stored directory is write-enabled.</li> <li>Make sure the file is not locked.</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| Log Access Error                                  | In Web Based Management, you have selected the <b>Cancel Print</b> option in the <b>Error Detection Setting of Store Print Log to Network</b> . | Wait for about 60 seconds until this message disappears from the LCD.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| No Device                                         | When configuring the Wi-Fi Direct network, this machine cannot find your mobile device.                                                         | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Make sure your machine and mobile device are in the Wi-Fi Direct mode.</li> <li>Move the mobile device closer to your machine.</li> <li>Move your machine and the mobile device to an obstruction-free area.</li> <li>If you are manually configuring the Wi-Fi Direct network, make sure you have entered the correct password.</li> <li>If your mobile device has a configuration page for how to obtain an IP address, make sure the IP address of your mobile device has been configured via DHCP.</li> </ul> |
| Server Timeout, contact your administrator.       | This machine cannot connect to the server for the Store Print Log to Network feature.                                                           | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Make sure your server address is correct.</li> <li>Make sure your server is connected to the network.</li> <li>Make sure the machine is connected to the network.</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| Wrong Date&Time, contact your administrator.      | This machine does not obtain the time from the SNTP time server.                                                                                | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Make sure the settings to access the SNTP time server are configured correctly in Web Based Management.</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |



| Error Messages                                    | Cause                                                                                                                                                  | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
|---------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| A device is already connected. Press [OK].        | Two mobile devices are already connected to the Wi-Fi Direct network when this machine is the Group Owner (G/O).                                       | After the current connection between your machine and another mobile device has shut down, try to configure the Wi-Fi Direct settings again. You can confirm the connection status by printing the Network Configuration Report.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| Authentication error, contact your administrator. | Your authentication setting for the Store Print Log to Network feature is not correct.                                                                 | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Make sure the <b>Username</b> and <b>Password</b> in <b>Authentication Setting</b> are correct. If the username is part of a domain, enter the username in one of the following styles: user@domain or domain\user.</li> <li>Make sure the SNTP time server settings are configured correctly so the time matches the time used for authentication by Kerberos or NTLMv2.</li> </ul>                                                                                                                              |
| Check User ID and Password.                       | The Kerberos Authentication error.                                                                                                                     | Make sure you have entered a correct user name and a password for the Kerberos server. For more information on the Kerberos server settings, contact your network administrator.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
|                                                   | The date, time and time zone settings of this machine are not correct.                                                                                 | Confirm your machine's date, time and time zone settings.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
|                                                   | The DNS server configuration is not correct.                                                                                                           | Contact your network administrator for the information on the DNS server settings.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
|                                                   | This machine cannot connect to the Kerberos server.                                                                                                    | Contact your network administrator for the information on the Kerberos server settings.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| Connection Error                                  | Other devices are trying to connect to the Wi-Fi Direct network at the same time.                                                                      | Make sure there are no other devices trying to connect to the Wi-Fi Direct network, and then try to configure the Wi-Fi Direct settings again.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
| Connection Failed                                 | This machine and your mobile device cannot communicate during the Wi-Fi Direct network configuration.                                                  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Move the mobile device closer to your machine.</li> <li>Move your machine and the mobile device to an obstruction-free area.</li> <li>If you are using the PIN Method of WPS, make sure you have entered the correct PIN.</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| File access error, contact your administrator.    | This machine cannot access the destination folder for the Store Print Log to Network feature.                                                          | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Make sure the stored directory name is correct.</li> <li>Make sure the stored directory is write-enabled.</li> <li>Make sure the file is not locked.</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| Log Access Error                                  | In Web Based Management, you have selected the <b>Cancel Print</b> option in the <b>Error Detection Setting</b> of <b>Store Print Log to Network</b> . | Wait for about 60 seconds until this message disappears from the LCD.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| No Device                                         | When configuring the Wi-Fi Direct network, this machine cannot find your mobile device.                                                                | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Make sure your machine and mobile device are in the Wi-Fi Direct mode.</li> <li>Move the mobile device closer to your machine.</li> <li>Move your machine and the mobile device to an obstruction-free area.</li> <li>If you are manually configuring the Wi-Fi Direct network, make sure you have entered the correct password.</li> <li>If your mobile device has a configuration page for how to obtain an IP address, make sure the IP address of your mobile device has been configured via DHCP.</li> </ul> |

| Error Messages                                       | Cause                                                                                       | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
|------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Server timeout,<br>contact your<br>administrator.    | This machine cannot connect<br>to the server for the Store Print<br>Log to Network feature. | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Make sure your server address is correct.</li> <li>• Make sure your server is connected to the network.</li> <li>• Make sure the machine is connected to the network.</li> </ul> |
|                                                      | This machine cannot connect<br>to the LDAP server.                                          | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Make sure your server address is correct.</li> <li>• Make sure your server is connected to the network.</li> <li>• Make sure the machine is connected to the network.</li> </ul> |
|                                                      | This machine cannot connect<br>to the Active Directory server.                              | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Make sure your server address is correct.</li> <li>• Make sure your server is connected to the network.</li> <li>• Make sure the machine is connected to the network.</li> </ul> |
| Wrong Date & Time,<br>contact your<br>administrator. | This machine does not obtain<br>the time from the SNTP time<br>server.                      | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Make sure the settings to access the SNTP time<br/>server are configured correctly in Web Based<br/>Management.</li> </ul>                                                       |
| Internal Error                                       | This machine's LDAP protocol<br>is disabled.                                                | Confirm your authentication method, and then enable the<br>necessary protocol setting in the Web Based<br>Management.                                                                                                     |
|                                                      | This machine's CIFS protocol<br>is disabled.                                                |                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |



## Related Information

- [Network Problems](#)

## Where Can I Find My Machine's Network Settings?

- [Print the Network Configuration Report](#)
- [Change Machine Settings from Your Computer](#)

## I Cannot Complete the Wireless Network Setup Configuration

Turn your wireless router off and back on. Then try to configure the wireless settings again. If you are unable to resolve the problem, follow the instructions below:

Investigate the problem using the WLAN Report.

| Cause                                                                                                                                       | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            | Interface    |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------|
| Your security settings (SSID/Network Key) are not correct.                                                                                  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Confirm the security settings using the Wireless Setup Helper utility.</li><li>• Select and confirm that you are using the correct security settings.<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>- See the instructions supplied with your wireless LAN access point/router for information on how to find the security settings.</li><li>- The manufacturer's name or model number of the wireless LAN access point/router may be used as the default security settings.</li><li>- Consult with the access point/router manufacturer, your Internet provider, or network administrator.</li></ul></li><li>• For definitions of SSID and Network Key, see the entries SSID, Network Key and Channels in the Glossary.</li></ul> | Wireless     |
| Your machine's MAC address is not allowed.                                                                                                  | Confirm that this machine's MAC Address is allowed in the filter. You can find the MAC Address on your machine's control panel.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   | Wireless     |
| Your wireless LAN access point/router is in stealth mode (not broadcasting the SSID).                                                       | <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Enter the correct SSID name or Network Key manually.</li><li>• Check the SSID name or the Network Key in the instructions supplied with your wireless LAN access point/router and reconfigure the wireless network setup.</li></ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       | Wireless     |
| Your security settings (SSID/password) are not correct.                                                                                     | <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Confirm the SSID and password.<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>- When you are configuring the network manually, the SSID and password are displayed on your machine. If your mobile device supports the manual configuration, the SSID and password will be displayed on your mobile device's screen.</li></ul></li><li>• For the definition of SSID, see the Glossary.</li></ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    | Wi-Fi Direct |
| You are using Android™ 4.0.                                                                                                                 | If your mobile device disconnects (approximately six minutes after using Wi-Fi Direct), try the one-push configuration using WPS (recommended) and set this machine as a G/O.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     | Wi-Fi Direct |
| Your machine is placed too far from your mobile device.                                                                                     | Move your machine within about 3.3 feet (1 metre) of the mobile device when you configure the Wi-Fi Direct network settings.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      | Wi-Fi Direct |
| There are some obstructions (walls or furniture, for example) between your machine and the mobile device.                                   | Move your machine to an obstruction-free area.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    | Wi-Fi Direct |
| There is a wireless computer, Bluetooth-supported device, microwave oven, or digital cordless phone near this machine or the mobile device. | Move other devices away from this machine or the mobile device.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   | Wi-Fi Direct |
| If you have checked and tried all of the above, but still cannot complete the Wi-Fi                                                         | <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Turn your machine off and back on. Then try to configure the Wi-Fi Direct settings again.</li></ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       | Wi-Fi Direct |

| Cause                                   | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                | Interface |
|-----------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------|
| Direct configuration, do the following: | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>If you are using your machine as a client, confirm how many devices are allowed in the current Wi-Fi Direct network, and then check how many devices are connected.</li> </ul> |           |



## Related Information

- [Network Problems](#)

### Related Topics:

- [Configure Your Machine for a Wireless Network When the SSID Is Not Broadcast](#)
- [Use Wi-Fi Direct®](#)

## My Machine Cannot Print over the Network

| Cause                                                               | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          | Interface      |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------|
| Your security software blocks your machine's access to the network. | Some security software might block access without showing a security alert dialog box even after successful installation.<br>To allow access, see the instructions for your security software or ask the software manufacturer.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 | Wired/Wireless |
| Your machine was not assigned an available IP address.              | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Confirm the IP address and the Subnet Mask.<br/>Verify that both the IP addresses and Subnet Masks of your computer and this machine are correct and located on the same network.<br/>For more information about how to verify the IP address and the Subnet Mask, ask your network administrator.</li> <li>(Windows)<br/>Confirm the IP address and the Subnet Mask using the Network Connection Repair Tool.</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | Wired/Wireless |
| The failed print job is still in your computer's print queue.       | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>If the failed print job is still in your computer's print queue, delete it.</li> <li>Otherwise, double-click the printer icon in the following folder and cancel all documents:                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(Windows 7)<br/>Click  (<b>Start</b>) &gt; <b>Devices and Printers</b> &gt; <b>Printers and Faxes</b>.</li> <li>(Windows 8.1)<br/>Move your mouse to the lower right corner of your desktop. When the menu bar appears, click <b>Settings</b> &gt; <b>Control Panel</b>. In the <b>Hardware and Sound</b> group, click <b>View devices and printers</b> &gt; <b>Printers</b>.</li> <li>(Windows 10 and Windows Server 2016)<br/>Click  &gt; <b>Windows System</b> &gt; <b>Control Panel</b>. In the <b>Hardware and Sound</b> group, click <b>View devices and printers</b>.</li> <li>(Windows Server 2008)<br/>Click <b>Start</b> &gt; <b>Control Panel</b> &gt; <b>Printers</b>.</li> <li>(Windows Server 2012)<br/>Move your mouse to the lower right corner of your desktop. When the menu bar appears, click <b>Settings</b> &gt; <b>Control Panel</b>. In the <b>Hardware</b> group, click <b>View devices and printers</b> &gt; <b>Printers</b>.</li> <li>(Windows Server 2012 R2 and Windows Server 2019)<br/>Click <b>Control Panel</b> on the <b>Start</b> screen. In the <b>Hardware</b> group, click <b>View devices and printers</b>.</li> <li>(Mac)<br/>Click <b>System Preferences</b> &gt; <b>Printers &amp; Scanners</b>.</li> </ul> </li> </ul> | Wired/Wireless |
| Your machine is not connected to the wireless network.              | Print the WLAN Report to check the error code on the printed report.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            | Wireless       |

If you have checked and tried all of the above, but your machine still cannot print, uninstall the printer driver and reinstall it.



### Related Information

- [Network Problems](#)

---

**Related Topics:**

- [Print the WLAN Report](#)
  - [Wireless LAN Report Error Codes](#)
  - [I Want to Check that My Network Devices are Working Correctly](#)
-

## I Want to Check that My Network Devices are Working Correctly

| Check                                                                      | Action                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | Interface      |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------|
| Check that your machine, access point/router, or network hub is turned on. | <b>Check the following:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• The power cord is connected correctly and this machine is turned on.</li><li>• The access point/router or hub is turned on and its link button is blinking.</li><li>• All protective packaging has been removed from the machine.</li><li>• The toner cartridge and imaging unit are installed correctly.</li><li>• The front and back covers are fully closed.</li><li>• Paper is inserted correctly in the paper tray.</li><li>• (For wired networks) A network cable is securely connected to this machine and to the router or hub.</li></ul> | Wired/Wireless |
| Check the <b>Link Status</b> in the Network Configuration Report.          | Print the Network Configuration Report and check that <b>Ethernet Link Status</b> or <b>Wireless Link Status</b> is <b>Link OK</b> .                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  | Wired/Wireless |
| Check that you can "ping" this machine from your computer.                 | Ping this machine from your computer using the IP address or the node name in the Windows command prompt or Mac Terminal application:<br>ping <ipaddress> or <nodename>. <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Successful: Your machine is working correctly and connected to the same network as your computer.</li><li>• Unsuccessful: Your machine is not connected to the same network as your computer.</li></ul> (Windows)<br>Ask the network administrator to fix the IP address and the subnet mask.<br>(Mac)<br>Confirm that the IP address and the Subnet Mask are set correctly.                         | Wired/Wireless |
| Check that your machine is connected to the wireless network.              | Print the WLAN Report to check the error code on the printed report.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  | Wireless       |

If you have checked and tried all of the above but you are still having problems, see the instructions supplied with your wireless LAN access point/router to find the SSID and the Network Key information and set them correctly.



### Related Information

- [Network Problems](#)

#### Related Topics:

- [Print the Network Configuration Report](#)
- [Print the WLAN Report](#)
- [Wireless LAN Report Error Codes](#)
- [My Machine Cannot Print over the Network](#)



## Other Problems

| Difficulties                      | Suggestions                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
|-----------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| The machine will not turn on.     | <p>Adverse conditions on the power connection (such as lightning or a power surge) may have triggered the machine's internal safety mechanisms. Unplug the power cord. Wait for ten minutes, then plug in the power cord and press  to turn on the machine.</p> <p>If the problem is not solved and you are using a power breaker, disconnect it to make sure it is not the problem. Plug the machine's power cord directly into a different known working wall electrical socket. If there is still no power, try a different power cable.</p> |
| The software cannot be installed. | <p><b>(Windows)</b></p> <p>If the Security Software warning appears on the computer screen during the installation, change the Security Software settings to permit the other program to run.</p> <p><b>(Mac)</b></p> <p>If you are using a firewall function of anti-spyware or antivirus security software, temporarily disable it and then install the software.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |



### Related Information

- [Troubleshooting](#)

## Check the Machine Information

Follow these instructions to check your machine's serial number and firmware version.

>> bizhub 4000i

>> bizhub 5000i

### bizhub 4000i

1. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the [Machine Info.] option, and then press **OK**.
2. Press ▲ or ▼ to select one of the following options:

| Option                                    | Description                                                        |
|-------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Print Settings                            | Print a list of your settings.                                     |
| Print NetSetting<br>(For network models)  | Print a list of your Network settings.                             |
| Print WLANReport<br>(For wireless models) | Print the wireless LAN connection results.                         |
| Print File List                           | Print a list of data saved in the memory.                          |
| Test Print                                | Print a test page.                                                 |
| Drum Dot Print                            | Print the Drum Dot Check Sheet.                                    |
| Print Font                                | Print a list of the machine's internal fonts.                      |
| Serial No.                                | Check your machine's serial number.                                |
| Version                                   | Check your machine's firmware version.                             |
| Page Count                                | Check the number of total pages the machine has printed.           |
| Parts Life                                | Check the percentage of the supplies' life that remains available. |

3. Press **OK**.

### bizhub 5000i

1. Press  [Settings] > [Machine Information].
2. Press one of the following options:

| Option                                    | Description                                |
|-------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------|
| Print Settings                            | Print a list of your settings.             |
| Print NetSetting<br>(For network models)  | Print a list of your Network settings.     |
| Print WLANReport<br>(For wireless models) | Print the wireless LAN connection results. |
| Print File List                           | Print a list of data saved in the memory.  |
| Test Print                                | Print a test page.                         |
| Drum Dot Print                            | Print the Drum Dot Check Sheet.            |

| Option     | Description                                                        |
|------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Print Font | Print a list of the machine's internal fonts.                      |
| Serial No. | Check your machine's serial number.                                |
| Version    | Check your machine's firmware version.                             |
| Page Count | Check the number of total pages the machine has printed.           |
| Parts Life | Check the percentage of the supplies' life that remains available. |

3. Press .



## Related Information

- [Troubleshooting](#)

## **Reset Functions**

- [Network Reset](#)
- [Factory Reset](#)

## Network Reset

Use the Network Reset function to restore the print server's network settings, such as password and IP address, back to its default factory settings.

- Unplug all the interface cables before you perform a Network Reset.

>> [bizhub 4000i](#)

>> [bizhub 5000i](#)

### bizhub 4000i

- Press ▲ or ▼ to select the [Reset Menu] option, and then press **OK**.
- Press ▲ or ▼ to select the [Network] option, and then press **OK**.
- Press ▲ to select [Yes].

The machine will restart automatically.

### bizhub 5000i

- Press  [Settings] > [Reset Menu] > [Network].
- Press the option in the table to reset the machine or to exit the process.

| Option | Description                                      |
|--------|--------------------------------------------------|
| Yes    | Reset the machine.                               |
| No     | The machine will exit and cancel the reset menu. |

- You will be asked to reboot the machine. Press the option in the table to reboot the machine or to exit the process.

| Option                  | Description                                           |
|-------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------|
| Press Yes for 2 seconds | Reboot the machine. The machine will begin the reset. |
| No                      | The machine will exit without rebooting.              |



If you do not reboot your machine, the reset process will not finish and your settings will remain unchanged.

- Press .



You can also reset the Network settings by pressing  [Settings] > [Network] > [Network Reset].



### Related Information

- [Reset Functions](#)

## Factory Reset

Use the Factory Reset function to restore all settings back to the factory settings.

Unplug all the interface cables before you perform a Factory Reset.

>> [bizhub 4000i](#)

>> [bizhub 5000i](#)

### bizhub 4000i

1. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the [Reset Menu] option, and then press **OK**.
2. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the [Factory Reset] option, and then press **OK**.
3. Press ▲ to select [Reset].

### bizhub 5000i

1. Press  [Settings] > [Reset Menu] > [Factory Reset].
2. Press the option in the table to reset the machine or to exit the process.

| Option | Description                                      |
|--------|--------------------------------------------------|
| Yes    | Reset the machine.                               |
| No     | The machine will exit and cancel the reset menu. |

3. You will be asked to reboot the machine. Press the option in the table to reboot the machine or to exit the process.

| Option                  | Description                                           |
|-------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------|
| Press Yes for 2 seconds | Reboot the machine. The machine will begin the reset. |
| No                      | The machine will exit without rebooting.              |



If you do not reboot your machine, the reset process will not finish and your settings will remain unchanged.

4. Press .



### Related Information

- [Reset Functions](#)

## Routine Maintenance

- [Replace Supplies](#)
- [Clean the Machine](#)
- [Check the Remaining Life of Parts](#)
- [Replace Periodic Maintenance Parts](#)

## Replace Supplies

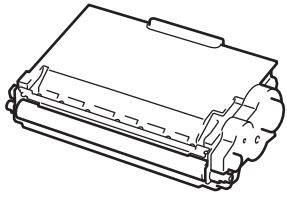
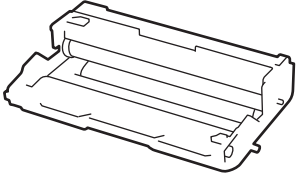
You must replace supplies when the machine indicates that the life of the supply is over.

Using non-genuine supplies may affect the print quality, hardware performance, and machine reliability.



The toner cartridge and imaging unit are two separate supplies. Make sure both are installed as an assembly.

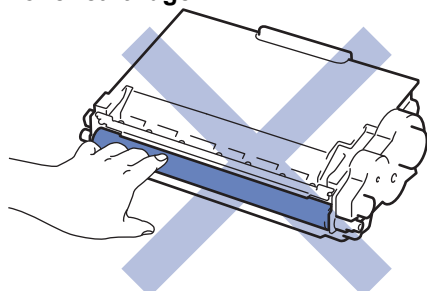
This table lists the messages to replace supplies when they reach their end of life. To avoid any inconvenience, you may want to buy spare supplies to keep as replacements before the machine stops printing.

| Indication    | Supply                                                                                                 |
|---------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Toner Low     | Toner cartridge<br> |
| Replace Toner |                                                                                                        |
| Drum !        | Imaging unit<br>    |
| Drum End Soon |                                                                                                        |
| Replace Drum  |                                                                                                        |

### NOTE

- Be sure to seal up the used supplies tightly in a bag so that toner powder does not spill out of the cartridge.
- Discard used consumable items according to local regulations, keeping it separate from domestic waste. If you have questions, call your local waste disposal office.
- We recommend placing used supplies on a piece of paper to prevent accidentally spilling or scattering the material inside.
- If you use paper that is not a direct equivalent for the recommended print media, the life of supplies and machine parts may be reduced.
- The projected life for each of the toner cartridges is based on ISO/IEC 19752. Frequency of replacement will vary depending on the print volume, percentage of coverage, types of media used, and powering on/off the machine.
- Frequency of replacing supplies except toner cartridges will vary depending on the print volume, types of media used, and powering on/off the machine.
- Handle the toner cartridge carefully. If toner scatters on your hands or clothes, immediately wipe or wash it off with cold water.
- To avoid print quality problems, DO NOT touch the shaded parts shown in the illustrations.

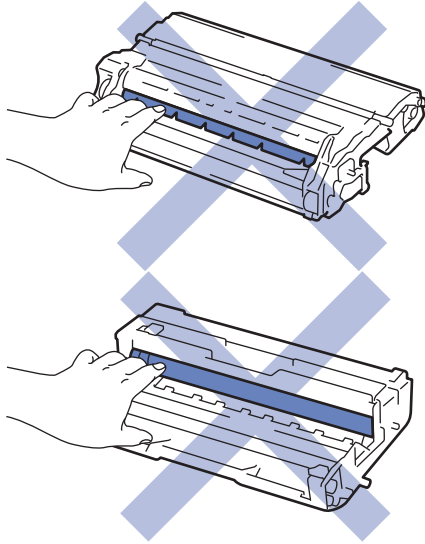
#### Toner cartridge





---

### Imaging unit



### Related Information

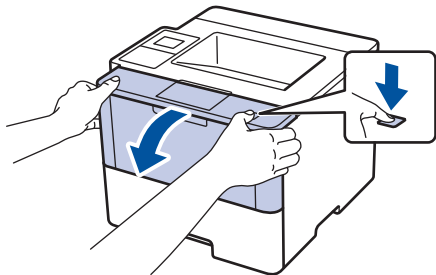
- [Routine Maintenance](#)
  - [Replace the Toner Cartridge](#)
  - [Replace the Imaging Unit](#)
  - [Reset the Drum Counter](#)

### Related Topics:

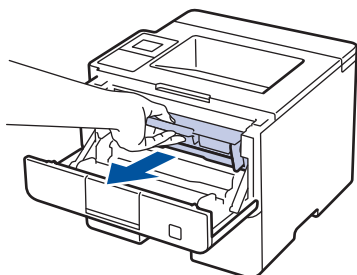
- [Error and Maintenance Messages](#)
-

## Replace the Toner Cartridge

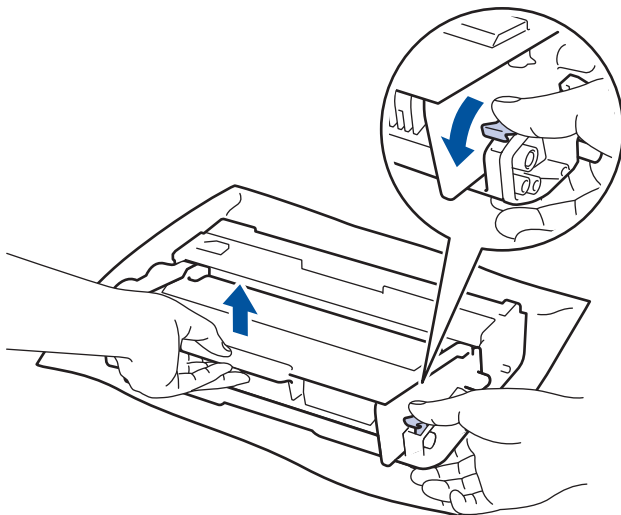
1. Make sure the machine is turned on.
2. Open the front cover.



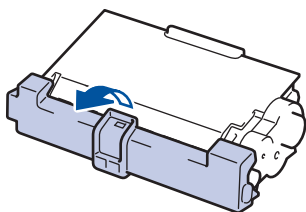
3. Remove the toner cartridge and imaging unit assembly from the machine.



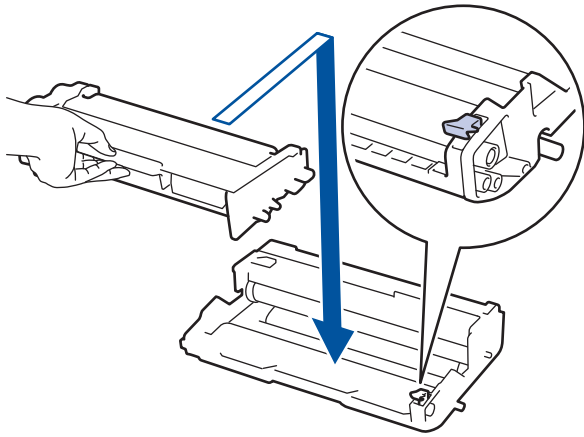
4. Push down the lock lever and take the toner cartridge out of the imaging unit.



5. Unpack the new toner cartridge.
6. Remove the protective cover.

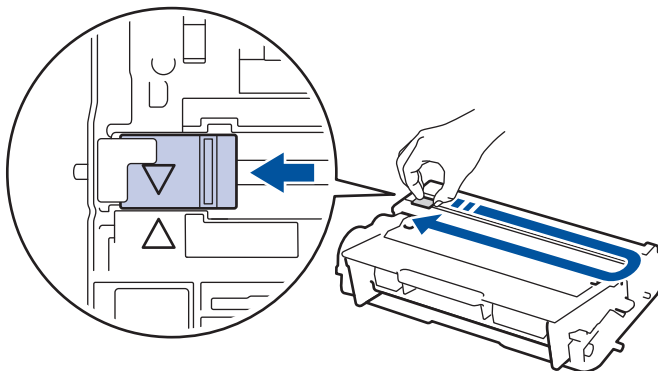


7. Put the new toner cartridge firmly into the imaging unit until you hear it lock into place.



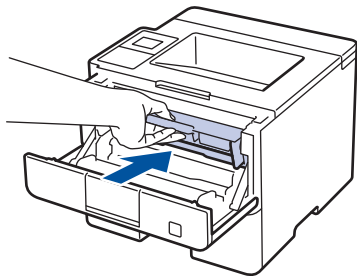
Make sure you put the toner cartridge in correctly or it may separate from the imaging unit.

8. Clean the corona wire inside the imaging unit by gently sliding the tab from left to right and right to left several times.



Be sure to return the tab to the Home position (▲). The arrow on the tab must be aligned with the arrow on the imaging unit. If it is not, printed pages may have a vertical stripe.

9. Install the toner cartridge and imaging unit assembly back into the machine.



10. Close the front cover of the machine.



- Do not turn off the machine or open the front cover until the machine returns to Ready Mode.
- The toner cartridge that comes with your machine is a Inbox toner cartridge.
- It is a good idea to keep a new toner cartridge ready for use when you see the Toner Low warning.
- To ensure high quality printing, we recommend using only original toner cartridges. When you want to buy toner cartridges, contact customer support.
- DO NOT unpack the new toner cartridge until you are ready to install it.
- If a toner cartridge is left unpacked for a long time, the toner life will be shortened.
- The machine strongly recommends you DO NOT refill the toner cartridge provided with your machine. We also strongly recommend you continue to use only original replacement toner cartridges. Use or attempted use of third party toner and/or cartridges in this machine may cause damage to the machine and/or may result in unsatisfactory print quality. Our limited warranty coverage does not apply to any problem that is caused by the use of third party toner and/or cartridges. To protect your investment and obtain premium performance from this machine, we strongly recommend the use of original Supplies.

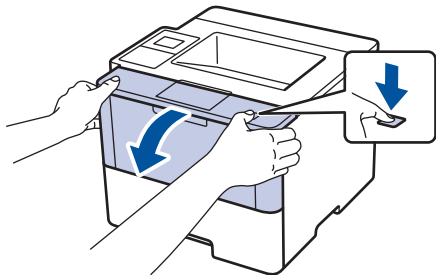


## Related Information

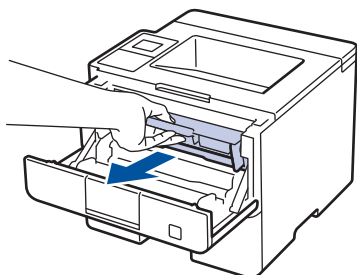
- [Replace Supplies](#)
-

## Replace the Imaging Unit

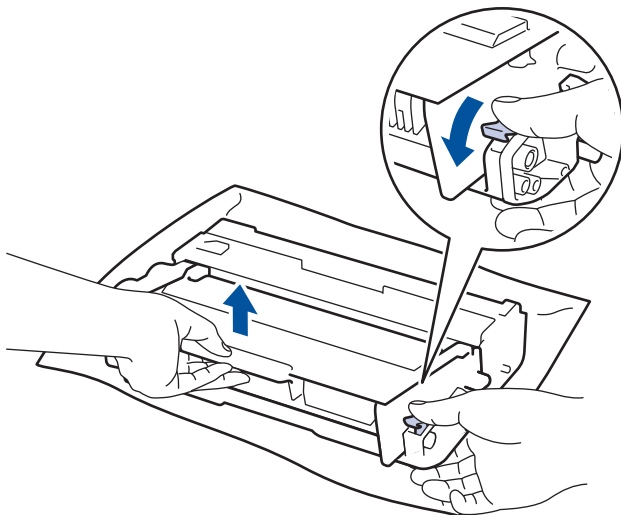
1. Make sure the machine is turned on.
2. Open the front cover.



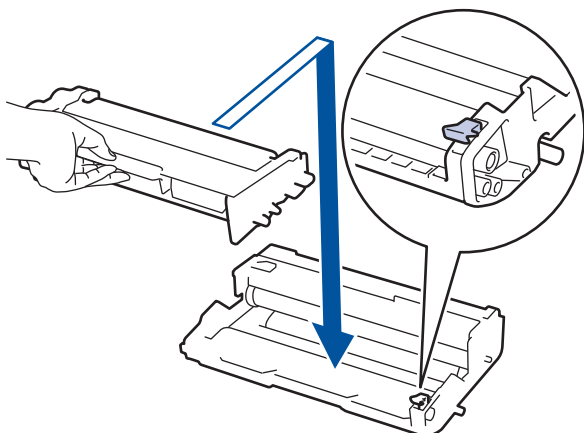
3. Remove the toner cartridge and imaging unit assembly from the machine.



4. Push down the lock lever and take the toner cartridge out of the imaging unit.

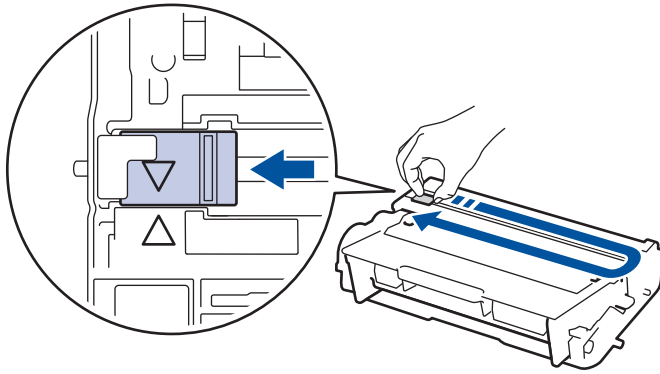


5. Unpack the new imaging unit.
6. Put the toner cartridge firmly into the new imaging unit until you hear it lock into place.



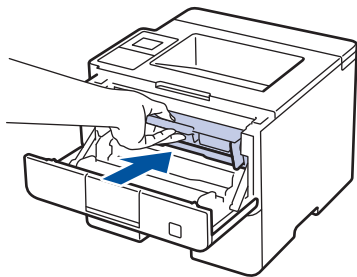
Make sure you put the toner cartridge in correctly or it may separate from the imaging unit.

7. Clean the corona wire inside the imaging unit by gently sliding the tab from left to right and right to left several times.



Be sure to return the tab to the Home position (▲). The arrow on the tab must be aligned with the arrow on the imaging unit. If it is not, printed pages may have a vertical stripe.

8. Install the toner cartridge and imaging unit assembly back into the machine.



9. Close the front cover of the machine.

## NOTE

- If an unpacked imaging unit is placed in direct sunlight (or room light for long periods of time), the unit may be damaged.
- For best performance, use only original toner.
- The machine should be used only in a clean, dust-free environment with adequate ventilation.

Printing with a non-genuine imaging unit may reduce not only the print quality but also the quality and life of the machine itself. Warranty coverage does not apply to problems caused by the use of a non-genuine imaging unit.



## Related Information

- [Replace Supplies](#)

### Related Topics:

- [Error and Maintenance Messages](#)

## Reset the Drum Counter

When you replace the imaging unit with a new one, you must reset the drum counter by completing the following steps:

### IMPORTANT

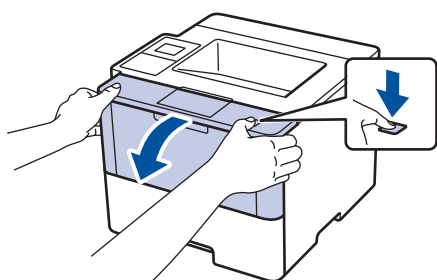
DO NOT reset the drum counter unless you are replacing the imaging unit.

>> [bizhub 4000i](#)

>> [bizhub 5000i](#)

### bizhub 4000i

1. Make sure the machine is turned on.
2. Open the front cover.



3. Press and hold **OK** for about two seconds to display the [Drum Unit] option, and then press **OK**.
4. Press **▲** for [Reset] to reset the drum counter.
5. Close the front cover of the machine.

### bizhub 5000i

1. Make sure the machine is turned on.
2. Press  [Settings] > [Machine Information] > [Parts Life].
3. Press and hold [Drum Life].
4. Press [Yes].
5. Press .



### Related Information

- [Replace Supplies](#)

## Clean the Machine

Clean the outside and inside of the machine regularly with a dry, lint-free cloth.

When you replace the toner cartridge or the imaging unit, make sure you clean the inside of the machine. If printed pages are stained with toner, clean the inside of the machine with a dry, lint-free cloth.

### WARNING

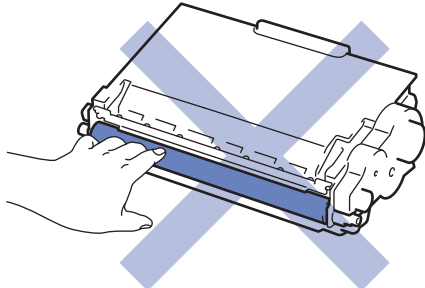
- DO NOT use flammable substances, any type of spray, or an organic solvent/liquid containing alcohol or ammonia to clean the inside or outside of the product. Doing so could cause a fire. Instead, use only a dry, lint-free cloth.



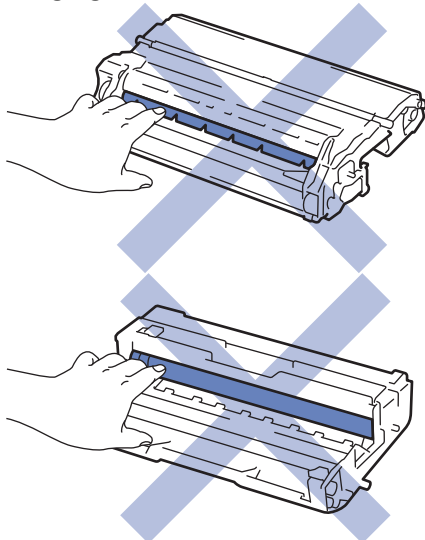
### IMPORTANT

- DO NOT use isopropyl alcohol to remove dirt from the control panel. It may crack the panel.
- To avoid print quality problems, DO NOT touch the shaded parts shown in the illustrations.

**Toner cartridge**



**Imaging Unit**



### Related Information

- [Routine Maintenance](#)
  - [Clean the Touchscreen LCD](#)
  - [Clean the Corona Wire](#)



- 
- Clean the Imaging Unit
  - Clean the Paper Pick-up Rollers
-

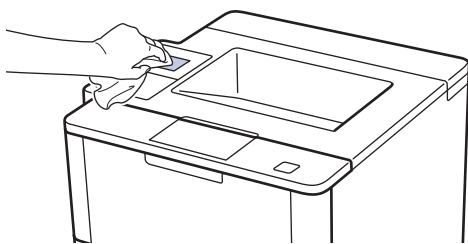
## Clean the Touchscreen LCD

**Related Models:** bizhub 5000i

### IMPORTANT

DO NOT use any type of liquid cleaners (including ethanol).

1. Press and hold  to turn the machine off.
2. Clean the touchscreen with a dry, soft lint-free cloth.



3. Press  to turn the machine on.



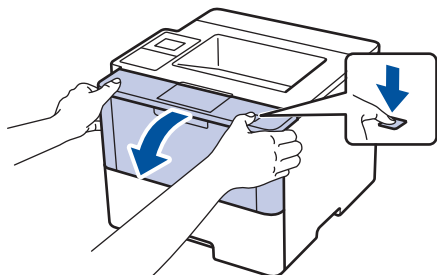
### Related Information

- [Clean the Machine](#)

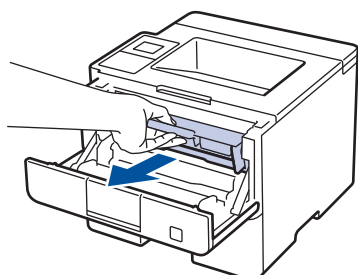
## Clean the Corona Wire

If you have print quality problems or the control panel displays [Drum !] status, clean the corona wire.

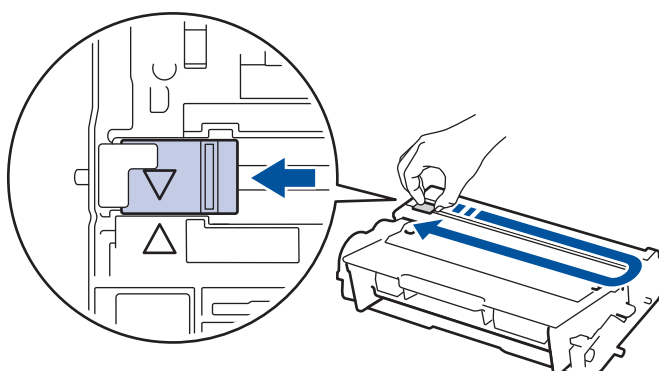
1. Open the front cover.



2. Remove the toner cartridge and imaging unit assembly from the machine.

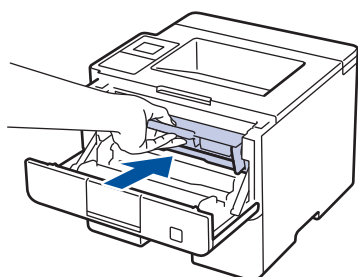


3. Clean the corona wire inside the imaging unit by gently sliding the tab from left to right and right to left several times.



Be sure to return the tab to the Home position (▲). The arrow on the tab must be aligned with the arrow on the imaging unit. If it is not, printed pages may have a vertical stripe.

4. Install the toner cartridge and imaging unit assembly back into the machine.



5. Close the front cover of the machine.



### Related Information

- [Clean the Machine](#)

#### Related Topics:

- [Error and Maintenance Messages](#)

## Clean the Imaging Unit

If your printout has dots or other repeating marks at 94 mm intervals, the drum may have foreign material, such as glue from a label, stuck on the drum surface.

>> bizhub 4000i

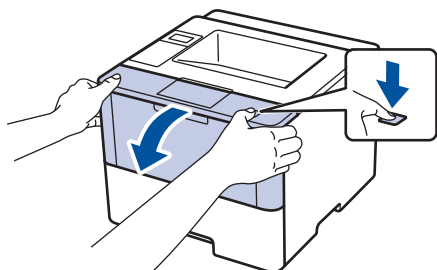
>> bizhub 5000i

### bizhub 4000i

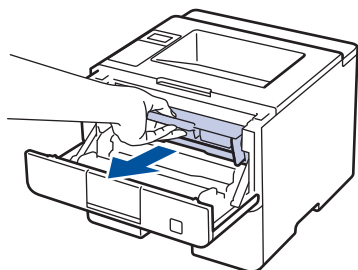
1. Make sure the machine is in Ready Mode.
2. Press ▲ or ▼ to display the [Machine Info.] option, and then press **OK**.
3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the [Drum Dot Print] option.
4. Press **OK**.

The machine prints the Drum Dot Check Sheet.

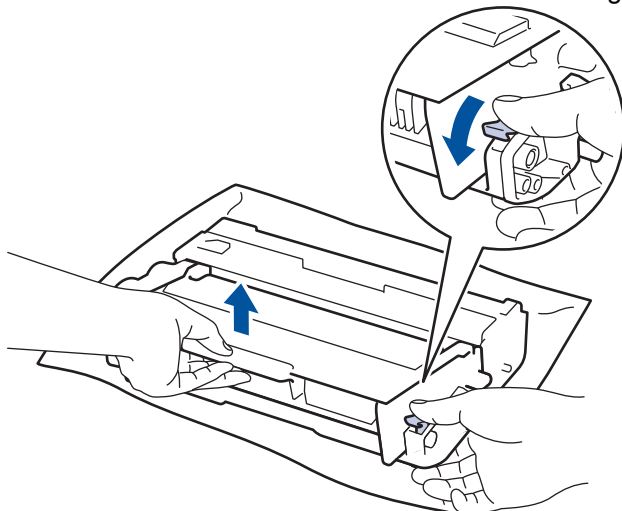
5. Press and hold  to turn the machine off.
6. Open the front cover.



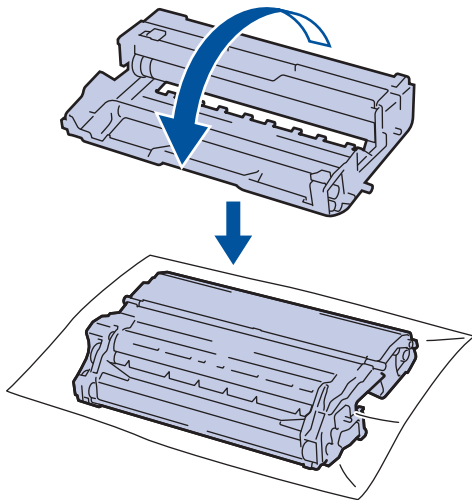
7. Remove the toner cartridge and imaging unit assembly from the machine.



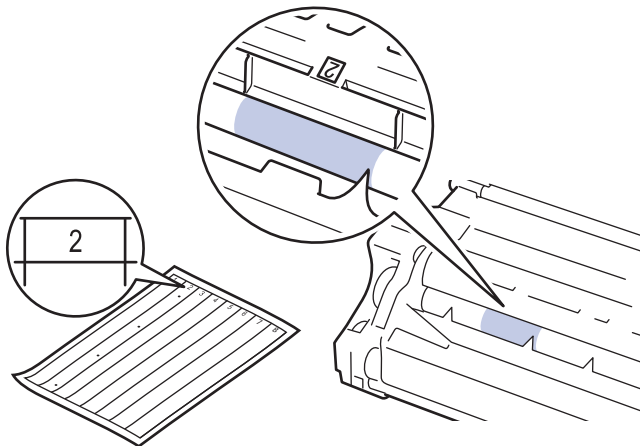
8. Push down the lock lever and take the toner cartridge out of the imaging unit.



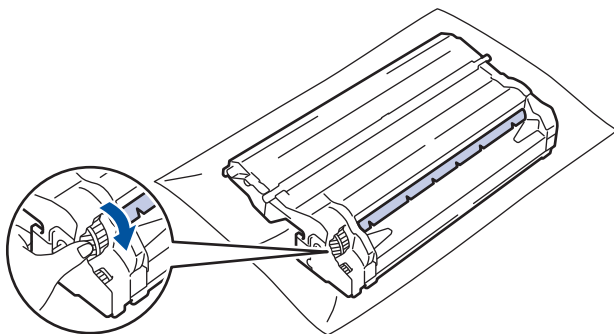
9. Turn the imaging unit as shown in the illustration. Make sure that the imaging unit gear is on the left side.



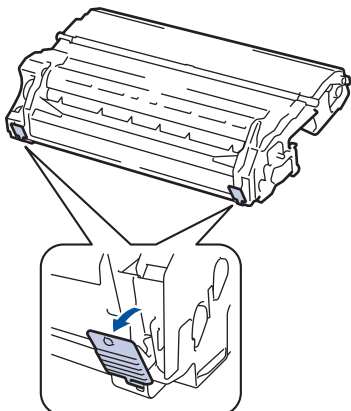
10. Use the numbered markers next to the drum roller to find the mark on the drum. For example, a dot in column 2 on the check sheet means that there is a mark in drum region “2”.



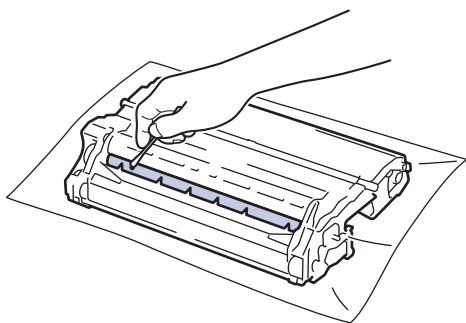
11. Turn the edge of the imaging unit toward you while looking at the drum surface to find the mark.



- To avoid print quality problems, **DO NOT** touch the surface of the imaging unit, only the edge.
- You can turn the imaging unit gear more easily by pulling down the black levers. When you have finished turning the gear, push the levers back to the original position.



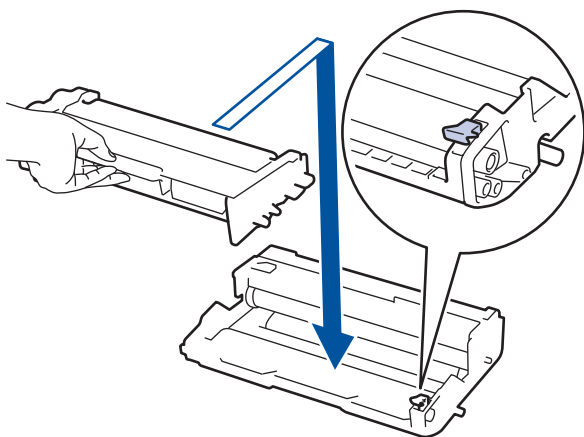
12. Wipe the surface of the drum gently with a dry cotton swab until the mark on the surface comes off.



## NOTE

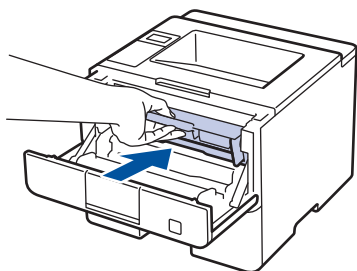
DO NOT clean the surface of the photosensitive drum with a sharp object or any liquids.

13. Put the toner cartridge firmly into the imaging unit until you hear it lock into place.



Make sure you put the toner cartridge in correctly or it may separate from the imaging unit.

14. Install the toner cartridge and imaging unit assembly back into the machine.



15. Close the front cover of the machine.

16. Press  to turn the machine on.

## bizhub 5000i

1. Make sure the machine is in Ready Mode.

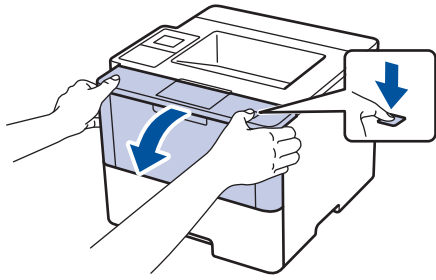
2. Press  [Settings] > [Machine Information] > [Drum Dot Print].

3. Press [OK].

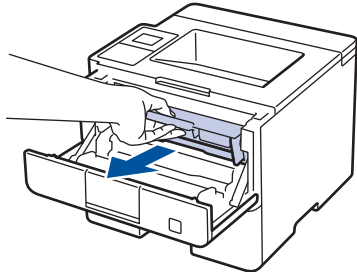
The machine prints the Drum Dot Check Sheet.

4. Press and hold  to turn the machine off.

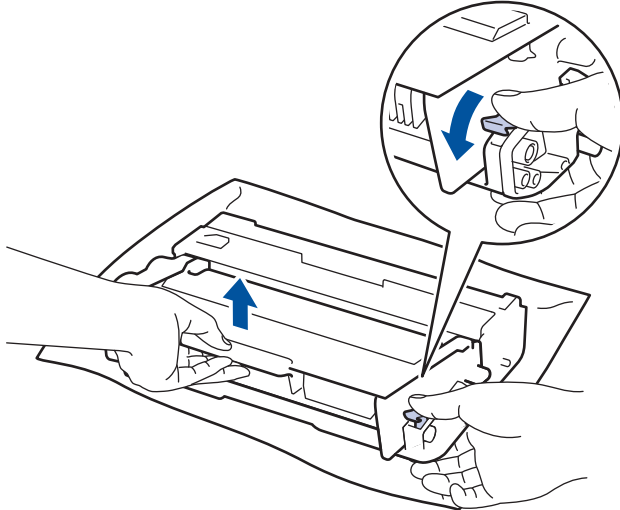
5. Open the front cover.



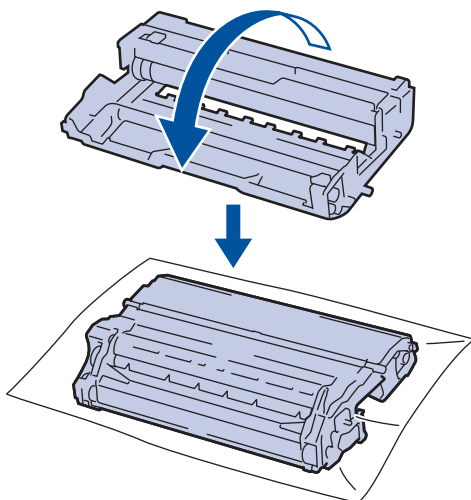
6. Remove the toner cartridge and imaging unit assembly from the machine.



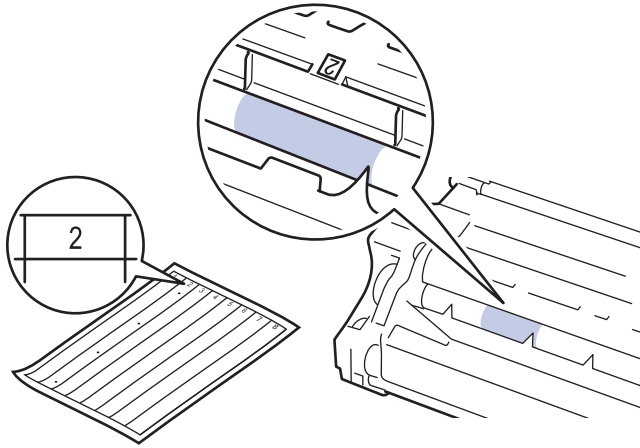
7. Push down the lock lever and take the toner cartridge out of the imaging unit.



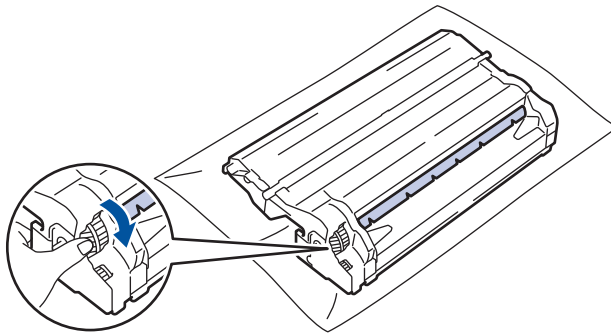
8. Turn the imaging unit as shown in the illustration. Make sure that the imaging unit gear is on the left side.



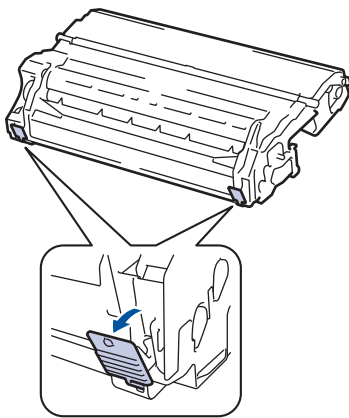
9. Use the numbered markers next to the drum roller to find the mark on the drum. For example, a dot in column 2 on the check sheet means that there is a mark in drum region "2".



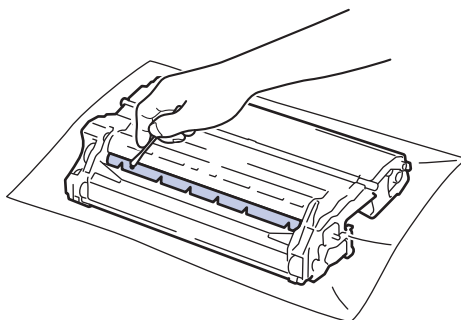
10. Turn the edge of the imaging unit toward you while looking at the drum surface to find the mark.



- To avoid print quality problems, DO NOT touch the surface of the imaging unit, only the edge.
- You can turn the imaging unit gear more easily by pulling down the black levers. When you have finished turning the gear, push the levers back to the original position.



11. Wipe the surface of the drum gently with a dry cotton swab until the mark on the surface comes off.

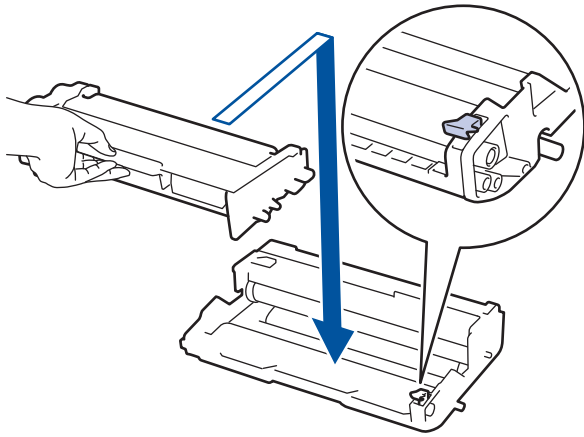


## NOTE

DO NOT clean the surface of the photosensitive drum with a sharp object or any liquids.

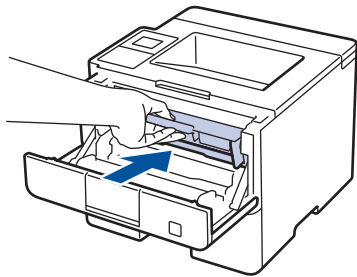
12. Put the toner cartridge firmly into the imaging unit until you hear it lock into place.





Make sure you put the toner cartridge in correctly or it may separate from the imaging unit.

13. Install the toner cartridge and imaging unit assembly back into the machine.



14. Close the front cover of the machine.

15. Press  to turn the machine on.



### Related Information

- [Clean the Machine](#)

#### Related Topics:

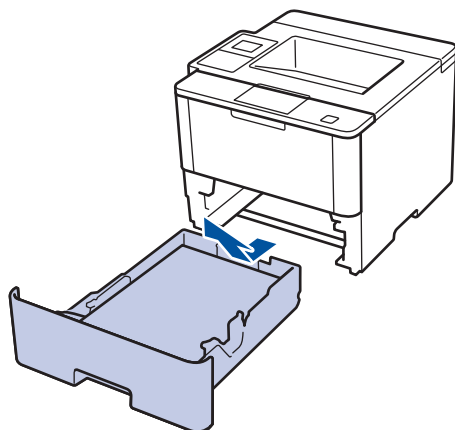
- [Improve the Print Quality](#)

## Clean the Paper Pick-up Rollers

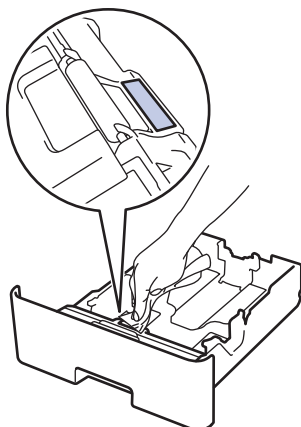
Cleaning the paper pick-up rollers periodically may prevent paper jams by ensuring that paper feeds properly.

If you have paper feed problems, clean the pick-up rollers as follows:

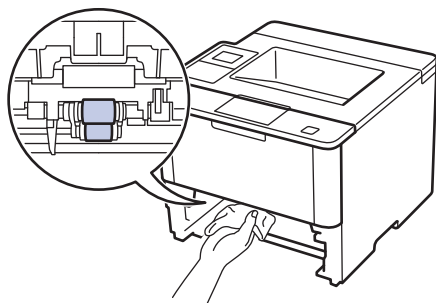
1. Press and hold  to turn the machine off.
2. Pull the paper tray completely out of the machine.



3. If paper is loaded or something is stuck inside in the paper tray, remove it.
4. Tightly wring out a lint-free cloth soaked in lukewarm water, and then wipe the separator pad on the paper tray to remove dust.



5. Wipe the two pick-up rollers inside the machine to remove dust.



6. Reload the paper and put the paper tray firmly back in the machine.
7. Press  to turn the machine on.



### Related Information

- [Clean the Machine](#)

---

**Related Topics:**

- [Printing Problems](#)
-

## Check the Remaining Life of Parts

>> [bizhub 4000i](#)

>> [bizhub 5000i](#)

### **bizhub 4000i**

1. Press ▲ or ▼ to display the [Machine Info.] option, and then press **OK**.
2. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the [Parts Life] option, and then press **OK**.
3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the machine part you want to check, and then press **OK**.  
The LCD displays the approximate remaining part life.

### **bizhub 5000i**

1. Press  [Settings] > [Machine Information] > [Parts Life].
2. Press ▲ or ▼ to display the machine parts, and then press the machine part you want to check.  
The LCD displays the approximate remaining part life.
3. Press .



### **Related Information**

- [Routine Maintenance](#)

## Replace Periodic Maintenance Parts

Replace the following parts regularly to maintain print quality.

Contact customer support when the following message appears on the LCD:

| LCD Message                    | Description                                               |
|--------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------|
| Replace Fuser                  | Replace the Fuser Unit.                                   |
| Replace Laser                  | Replace the Laser Unit.                                   |
| Replace PF Kit1                | Replace the Paper Feeding Kit for the Paper Tray.         |
| Replace PF Kit2 <sup>1</sup>   | Replace the Paper Feeding Kit for the Optional Tray(s).   |
| Replace PF Kit3 <sup>1</sup>   | Replace the Paper Feeding Kit for the Optional Tray(s).   |
| Replace PF Kit4 <sup>1 2</sup> | Replace the Paper Feeding Kit for the Optional Tray(s).   |
| Replace PF KitMP               | Replace the Paper Feeding Kit for the Multi-purpose Tray. |

<sup>1</sup> If you use the Optional Tray(s) with your machine, this message will appear on the LCD. When the machine has multiple Optional Trays, the machine displays messages using numbers corresponding to each Optional Tray.

<sup>2</sup> Only for certain model



### Related Information

- [Routine Maintenance](#)

## Machine Settings

Customise settings and features, create shortcuts, and work with options displayed on the machine's LCD to make your machine a more efficient work tool.

- [Change Machine Settings from the Control Panel](#)
- [Change Machine Settings from Your Computer](#)

## **Change Machine Settings from the Control Panel**

- [General Settings](#)
- [Settings and Features Tables](#)

## General Settings

- [Adjust the Machine's Volume](#)
- [Set Sleep Mode Countdown](#)
- [About Deep Sleep Mode](#)
- [Set Auto Power Off Mode](#)
- [Adjust the LCD Backlight Brightness](#)
- [Change How Long the LCD Backlight Stays On](#)
- [Reduce Toner Consumption](#)
- [Reduce Printing Noise](#)
- [Change the Language on the LCD](#)



## Adjust the Machine's Volume

**Related Models:** bizhub 5000i

1. Press  [Settings] > [General Setup] > [Volume] > [Beep].
2. Press ▲ or ▼ to display the [Off], [Low], [Med] or [High] option, and then press the option you want.
3. Press .



### Related Information

- [General Settings](#)

## Set Sleep Mode Countdown

The Sleep Mode (or Power Save Mode) setting can reduce power consumption. Select how long the machine must be idle before it goes into Sleep Mode. The Sleep Mode timer is reset when the machine receives a print job.

When the machine is in Sleep Mode, it acts as if it is turned off. The machine will wake up and start printing when it receives a print job. Use these instructions to set a time delay (countdown) before the machine enters Sleep Mode.

>> [bizhub 4000i](#)

>> [bizhub 5000i](#)

### **bizhub 4000i**

1. Press **▲** or **▼** to select the [General Setup] option, and then press **OK**.
2. Press **▲** or **▼** to select the [Ecology] option, and then press **OK**.
3. Press **▲** or **▼** to select the [Sleep Time] option, and then press **OK**.
4. Press **▲** or **▼** to enter the length of time, in minutes, that the machine should remain idle before entering Sleep Mode.  
Press **Go**.

### **bizhub 5000i**

1. Press  [Settings] > [General Setup] > [Ecology] > [Sleep Time].
2. Enter the length of time (maximum 50 minutes) the machine will remain idle before entering Sleep Mode, and then press [OK].
3. Press .

### **Related Information**

- [General Settings](#)

## About Deep Sleep Mode

If the machine is in Sleep Mode and does not receive any jobs for certain length of time, the machine will automatically enter Deep Sleep Mode. The length of time is based on your specific model and settings.

Deep Sleep Mode uses less power than Sleep Mode.

| Applicable Models      | Machine's LCD in Deep Sleep Mode                                                                                          | Conditions That Will Wake the Machine                                                                                                                                                                           |
|------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1-Line LCD models      | The LCD displays <code>Deep Sleep</code> .                                                                                | <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>The machine receives a job.</li><li>Someone presses a button on the control panel.</li></ul>                                                                              |
| Touchscreen LCD models | The LCD backlight turns off and  blinks. | <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>The machine receives a job.</li><li>Someone presses  or the touchscreen LCD.</li></ul> |



### Related Information

- [General Settings](#)

## Set Auto Power Off Mode

If the machine is in Deep Sleep Mode for certain length of time, based on your model and settings, the machine will go into Power Off Mode automatically. The machine does not go into Power Off Mode when the machine is connected to a network or has secure print data in the memory.

- To start printing, press  on the control panel and then send a print job.

>> [bizhub 4000i](#)

>> [bizhub 5000i](#)

### bizhub 4000i



Select how long the machine must be in Deep Sleep Mode before it goes into Auto Power Off Mode.

- Press  or  to display the [General Setup] option, and then press **OK**.
- Press  or  to display the [Ecology] option, and then press **OK**.
- Press  or  to select the [Auto Power Off] option, and then press **OK**.
- Press  or  to select the option you want, and then press **Go**.

### bizhub 5000i

- Press  [Settings] > [General Setup] > [Ecology] > [Auto Power Off].
- Press  or  to display the [Off], [1hour], [2hours], [4hours] or [8hours] option, and then press the option you want.
- Press .



### Related Information

- [General Settings](#)

## Adjust the LCD Backlight Brightness

**Related Models:** bizhub 5000i

If you are having difficulty reading the LCD, changing the brightness setting may help.

1. Press  [Settings] > [General Setup] > [Panel Control] > [LCD Settings] > [Backlight].
2. Press ▲ or ▼ to display the [Light], [Med] or [Dark] option, and then press the option you want.
3. Press .



### Related Information

- [General Settings](#)

## Change How Long the LCD Backlight Stays On

**Related Models:** bizhub 5000i

Set how long the LCD backlight stays on after you return to the LCD's Home screen.

1. Press  [Settings] > [General Setup] > [Panel Control] > [LCD Settings] > [Dim Timer].
2. Press ▲ or ▼ to display the [Off], [10sec], [20sec] or [30sec] option, and then press the option you want.
3. Press .



### Related Information

- [General Settings](#)

## Reduce Toner Consumption

Using the Toner Save feature may reduce toner consumption. When Toner Save is set to on, the print on your documents appears lighter.

We DO NOT recommend using the Toner Save feature for printing photo or greyscale images.

>> [bizhub 4000i](#)

>> [bizhub 5000i](#)

### bizhub 4000i

1. Press ▲ or ▼ to display the [General Setup] option, and then press **OK**.
2. Press ▲ or ▼ to display the [Ecology] option, and then press **OK**.
3. Press ▲ or ▼ to display the [Toner Save] option, and then press **OK**.
4. Press ▲ or ▼ to display [On], and then press **Go**.

### bizhub 5000i

1. Press  [Settings] > [General Setup] > [Ecology] > [Toner Save].
2. Press [On] or [Off].
3. Press .



### Related Information

- [General Settings](#)

## Reduce Printing Noise

The Quiet Mode setting can reduce printing noise. When Quiet Mode is turned on, the print speed becomes slower. The factory setting is off.

>> [bizhub 4000i](#)

>> [bizhub 5000i](#)

### bizhub 4000i

1. Press ▲ or ▼ to display the [General Setup] option, and then press **OK**.
2. Press ▲ or ▼ to display the [Ecology] option, and then press **OK**.
3. Press ▲ or ▼ to select the [Quiet Mode] option, and then press **OK**.
4. Press ▲ or ▼ to display the [On] or [Off] option, and then press **Go**.

### bizhub 5000i

1. Press  [Settings] > [General Setup] > [Ecology] > [Quiet Mode].
2. Press [On] or [Off].
3. Press .



### Related Information

- [General Settings](#)



## Change the Language on the LCD

Change the LCD language if needed.

This feature is not available in some countries.

>> [bizhub 4000i](#)

>> [bizhub 5000i](#)

### **bizhub 4000i**

1. Press ▲ or ▼ to display the [General Setup] option, and then press **OK**.
2. Press ▲ or ▼ to display the [Local Language] option, and then press **OK**.
3. Press ▲ or ▼ to display your language, and then press **Go**.

### **bizhub 5000i**

1. Press  [Settings] > [General Setup] > [Local Language].
2. Press your language.
3. Press .



### **Related Information**

- [General Settings](#)

## Settings and Features Tables

The Settings tables will help you understand the menu selections and options that are found in the machine's programs.

- [Access Menus and Change Your Machine's Settings](#)
- [Settings Tables \(1 Line LCD models\)](#)
- [Settings Tables \(1.8 inch touchscreen models\)](#)
- [Features Tables \(1.8 inch touchscreen models\)](#)

## Access Menus and Change Your Machine's Settings

**Related Models:** bizhub 4000i

Use the control panel to access the machine's menus and change various settings.

1. Scroll through each menu level by pressing ▲ or ▼.
2. When the option you want appears on the LCD, press **OK**.  
The LCD displays the next menu level.
3. Press ▲ or ▼ to scroll to your selection.
4. Press **OK** or **Go**.
5. When you have finished setting an option, the LCD displays [Accepted].



### Related Information

- [Settings and Features Tables](#)

## Settings Tables (1 Line LCD models)

**Related Models:** bizhub 4000i

Use these tables to understand the various menus and options that you will use to set your preferences on the machine.

### [Machine Info.]

| Level 1                 | Level 2                   | Description                                           |
|-------------------------|---------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------|
| Print Settings          | -                         | Print the Printer Settings page.                      |
| Print NetSetting        | -                         | Print the Network Configuration Report.               |
| Print WLANReport        | -                         | Print the wireless LAN connectivity diagnosis result. |
| Print File List         | -                         | Print a list of data saved in the memory.             |
| Test Print              | -                         | Print the test page.                                  |
| Drum Dot Print          | -                         | Print the Drum Dot Check Sheet.                       |
| Print Font              | PCL                       | Print the font list.                                  |
|                         | PS                        | Print the font list.                                  |
| Serial No.              | -                         | Display the machine's serial number.                  |
| Version                 | Main Version              | Display the main firmware version.                    |
|                         | Sub1 Version              | Display the sub firmware version.                     |
| Page Count              | -                         | Display the total printed pages.                      |
| Parts Life <sup>1</sup> | Toner Life                | Display the remaining life of the toner cartridge.    |
|                         | Drum Life                 | Display the remaining life of the imaging unit.       |
|                         | PF KitMP Life             | Display the remaining life of the PF kit MP.          |
|                         | PF Kit1 Life              | Display the remaining life of the PF Kit 1.           |
|                         | PF Kit2 Life <sup>2</sup> | Display the remaining life of the PF Kit 2.           |
|                         | PF Kit3 Life <sup>2</sup> | Display the remaining life of the PF Kit 3.           |
|                         | Fuser Life                | Display the remaining life of the fuser unit.         |
|                         | Laser Life                | Display the remaining life of the laser unit.         |

<sup>1</sup> Life is approximate and may vary by type of use.

<sup>2</sup> Available if the Lower Tray(s) is installed.

### [Paper Tray]

| Level 1        | Level 2       | Description                                                                                                                                   |
|----------------|---------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Tray Use       | -             | Select the tray that will be used.                                                                                                            |
| Priority       | -             | When <b>Auto</b> is selected in <b>Tray Use</b> , select the order in which the machine uses paper trays that contain paper of the same size. |
| Skip Tray      | -             | Select a specific tray you do not want to use; if it is loaded with paper of the wrong size.                                                  |
| Separator Tray | -             | Select the tray that contains the paper used as the separator paper, which is inserted between each print job.                                |
| 2-sided        | 2-sided Print | Select whether to print on both sides of the paper.                                                                                           |

| Level 1          | Level 2            | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
|------------------|--------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 2-sided          | Single Image       | For a print job where the last page is a 1-sided image, select the 1-sided Feed option to reduce printing time.<br><br>When you use Letterhead or Preprinted paper, you must select the 2-sided Feed option. If you select 1-sided Feed for Letterhead or Preprinted paper, the last page will be printed on the reverse side. |
| Paper Type       | MP Tray            | Select the paper type that matches the paper in the MP tray.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
|                  | Tray1              | Select the paper type that matches the paper in the standard paper tray.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
|                  | Tray2 <sup>1</sup> | Select the paper type that matches the paper in the Optional Tray (Tray 2).                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
|                  | Tray3 <sup>1</sup> | Select the paper type that matches the paper in the Optional Tray (Tray 3).                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| Paper Size       | MP Tray            | Select the size of paper you loaded in the MP tray.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
|                  | Tray1              | Select the size of paper you loaded in the standard paper tray.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
|                  | Tray2 <sup>1</sup> | Select the size of paper you loaded in the Optional Tray (Tray 2).                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
|                  | Tray3 <sup>1</sup> | Select the size of paper you loaded in the Optional Tray (Tray 3).                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| Paper Low Notice | Notification       | Select whether to display a message telling you that the paper tray is nearly empty.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
|                  | Notice Level       | Select the minimum paper level that will trigger the message.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| Check Size       | -                  | Select whether to display a message telling you to check that the size of the paper in the machine and the machine's Paper Size setting match.                                                                                                                                                                                 |

<sup>1</sup> Available if the Optional Tray(s) is installed.

## [General Setup]

| Level 1        | Level 2        | Description                                                                                                                                                 |
|----------------|----------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Local Language | -              | Select the LCD language for your country.                                                                                                                   |
| Resolution     | -              | Choose a print resolution.                                                                                                                                  |
| Density        | -              | Increase or decrease the print density.                                                                                                                     |
| Ecology        | Toner Save     | Increase the page yield of the toner cartridge.                                                                                                             |
|                | Sleep Time     | Set how much time will pass before the machine enters Power Saving Mode.                                                                                    |
|                | Quiet Mode     | Decrease printing noise.                                                                                                                                    |
|                | Auto Power Off | Set the number of hours that the machine will remain in Deep Sleep Mode before going into Power Off Mode.                                                   |
| Panel Control  | Button Repeat  | Set the time for the LCD message to change when holding ▲ or ▼ at intervals.                                                                                |
|                | Message Scroll | Set the time in seconds that an LCD message will scroll across the LCD. From Level 1=0.2 sec to Level 10=2.0 sec.                                           |
|                | LCD Contrast   | Adjust the contrast of the LCD.                                                                                                                             |
|                | Auto Online    | Set the machine to return to Ready Mode after it has been idle for 30 seconds.                                                                              |
| Setting Lock   | -              | Lock your machine's settings using the Setting Lock password.                                                                                               |
| Interface      | Select         | Select the interface to use.<br><br>If you select Auto, the machine changes the interface to USB or Network depending on which interface is receiving data. |
|                | Auto IF Time   | Set the time-out period for the auto interface selection.                                                                                                   |
|                | Input Buffer   | Increase or decrease the input buffer capacity.                                                                                                             |
| Delete Storage | Macro ID       | Delete the registered Macro data.                                                                                                                           |

| Level 1        | Level 2 | Description                                                              |
|----------------|---------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Delete Storage | Font ID | Delete the registered Font data.                                         |
|                | Format  | Restore the Macro and Font data of your machine to the default settings. |

#### [Print Menu]

| Level 1        | Level 2       | Description                                                                                                                        |
|----------------|---------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Emulation      | -             | Choose the emulation mode.                                                                                                         |
| Auto Continue  | -             | Select this setting if you want the machine to clear paper size errors or media type errors, and use paper from other trays.       |
| Paper Type     | -             | Set the type of paper.                                                                                                             |
| Paper Size     | -             | Set the size of paper.                                                                                                             |
| Copies         | -             | Set the number of printed pages.                                                                                                   |
| Orientation    | -             | Set pages to print in either portrait or landscape orientation.                                                                    |
| Print Position | X Offset      | Move the print start position (at the top-left corner of pages) horizontally up to -500 (left) to +500 (right) dots in 300 dpi.    |
|                | Y Offset      | Move the print start position (at the top-left corner of pages) vertically up to -500 (up) to +500 (down) dots in 300 dpi.         |
| Auto FF        | -             | Allow the machine to print any remaining data automatically.                                                                       |
| PCL            | Font No.      | Set the font number.                                                                                                               |
|                | Font Pitch    | Set the font pitch.<br>The Font Pitch menu appears when you choose I012 to I018, I031 to I037 or I097 to I109 in Font No. setting. |
|                | Font Point    | Set the font size.<br>The Font Point menu appears when you choose I000 to I011, I019 to I030 or I038 to I096 in Font No. setting.  |
|                | Symbol Set    | Select the symbol or character set.                                                                                                |
|                | Table Print   | Print the code table.                                                                                                              |
|                | Auto LF       | ON: CR -> CR+LF, OFF: CR -> CR                                                                                                     |
|                | Auto CR       | ON: LF -> LF+CR, FF -> FF+CR, or VT -> VT+CR<br>OFF: LF -> LF, FF -> FF, or VT -> VT                                               |
|                | Auto WRAP     | Choose whether a line feed and carriage return will happen when the machine reaches the right margin.                              |
|                | Auto SKIP     | Choose whether a line feed and carriage return will happen when the carriage position reaches the bottom margin.                   |
|                | Left Margin   | Set the left margin at column 0 to 70 columns at 1 cpi.                                                                            |
|                | Right Margin  | Set the right margin at column 10 to 80 columns at 1 cpi.                                                                          |
|                | Top Margin    | Set the top margin distance from the top edge of the paper.                                                                        |
|                | Bottom Margin | Set the bottom margin distance from the bottom edge of the paper.                                                                  |
|                | Lines         | Set the number of lines on each page.                                                                                              |
|                | Tray Command  | Select this setting if a tray mismatch appears when you use the HP drivers.                                                        |
| Epson FX-850   | Font No.      | Set the font number.                                                                                                               |
|                | Font Pitch    | Set the font pitch.<br>The Font Pitch menu appears when you choose I012 to I018, I031 to I037 or I097 to I109 in Font No. setting. |
|                | Font Point    | Set the font size.                                                                                                                 |

| Level 1        | Level 2       | Description                                                                                                                                      |
|----------------|---------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Epson FX-850   |               | The Font Point menu appears when you choose I000 to I011, I019 to I030 or I038 to I096 in Font No. setting.                                      |
|                | Character Set | Select the symbol or character set.                                                                                                              |
|                | Table Print   | Print the code table.                                                                                                                            |
|                | Auto LF       | ON: CR -> CR+LF, OFF: CR -> CR                                                                                                                   |
|                | Auto Mask     | Set the top and bottom margins to two-line each. When you set Auto Mask to On, this setting overrides the Top Margin and Bottom Margin settings. |
|                | Left Margin   | Set the left margin at column 0 to 70 columns at 1 cpi.                                                                                          |
|                | Right Margin  | Set the right margin at column 10 to 80 columns at 1 cpi.                                                                                        |
|                | Top Margin    | Set the top margin distance from the top edge of the paper.                                                                                      |
|                | Bottom Margin | Set the bottom margin distance from the bottom edge of the paper.                                                                                |
|                | Lines         | Set the number of lines on each page.                                                                                                            |
| IBM Proprinter | Font No.      | Set the font number.                                                                                                                             |
|                | Font Pitch    | Set the font pitch.<br>The Font Pitch menu appears when you choose I012 to I018, I031 to I037 or I097 to I109 in Font No. setting.               |
|                | Font Point    | Set the font size.<br>The Font Point menu appears when you choose I000 to I011, I019 to I030 or I038 to I096 in Font No. setting.                |
|                | Character Set | Select the symbol or character set.                                                                                                              |
|                | Table Print   | Print the code table.                                                                                                                            |
|                | Auto LF       | ON: CR -> CR+LF, OFF: CR -> CR                                                                                                                   |
|                | Auto CR       | ON: LF -> LF+CR, FF -> FF+CR, or VT -> VT+CR<br>OFF: LF -> LF, FF -> FF, or VT -> VT                                                             |
|                | Auto Mask     | Set the top and bottom margins to two-line each. When you set Auto Mask to On, this setting overrides the Top Margin and Bottom Margin settings. |
|                | Left Margin   | Set the left margin at column 0 to 70 columns at 1 cpi.                                                                                          |
|                | Right Margin  | Set the right margin at column 10 to 80 columns at 1 cpi.                                                                                        |
|                | Top Margin    | Set the top margin distance from the top edge of the paper.                                                                                      |
|                | Bottom Margin | Set the bottom margin distance from the bottom edge of the paper.                                                                                |
|                | Lines         | Set the number of lines on each page.                                                                                                            |
| PS             | Error Print   | Choose whether the machine prints the error information when errors occur.                                                                       |

### [Network] (bizhub 4000i)

| Level 1   | Level 2 | Level 3       | Description                                                                                                                           |
|-----------|---------|---------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Wired LAN | TCP/IP  | Boot Method   | Choose the IP method that best suits your needs.                                                                                      |
|           |         | IP Address    | Enter the IP address.                                                                                                                 |
|           |         | Subnet Mask   | Enter the Subnet mask.                                                                                                                |
|           |         | Gateway       | Enter the Gateway address.                                                                                                            |
|           |         | IP Boot Tries | Specify the number of attempts the machine will try to obtain an IP address when the Boot Method is set to any setting except Static. |
|           |         | APIPA         | Allocate the IP address from the link-local address range automatically <sup>1</sup> .                                                |

| Level 1      | Level 2        | Level 3       | Description                                                                                                                                          |
|--------------|----------------|---------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Wired LAN    | TCP/IP         | IPv6          | Enable or disable the IPv6 protocol.                                                                                                                 |
|              | Ethernet       | -             | Choose the Ethernet link mode.                                                                                                                       |
|              | Wired Status   | -             | Display the Ethernet link status.                                                                                                                    |
|              | MAC Address    | -             | Display the MAC address of the machine.                                                                                                              |
|              | Set to Default | -             | Restore wired network settings of your machine to the factory settings.                                                                              |
|              | Wired Enable   | -             | Turn the wired interface on or off.                                                                                                                  |
| WLAN         | TCP/IP         | Boot Method   | Choose the IP method that best suits your needs.                                                                                                     |
|              |                | IP Address    | Enter the IP address.                                                                                                                                |
|              |                | Subnet Mask   | Enter the Subnet mask.                                                                                                                               |
|              |                | Gateway       | Enter the Gateway address.                                                                                                                           |
|              |                | IP Boot Tries | Specify the number of attempts the machine will try to obtain an IP address when the <b>Boot Method</b> is set to any setting except <i>Static</i> . |
|              |                | APIPA         | Allocate the IP address from the link-local address range automatically <sup>1</sup> .                                                               |
|              |                | IPv6          | Enable or disable the IPv6 protocol.                                                                                                                 |
|              | Setup Wizard   | -             | Configure the wireless network settings using the setup wizard.                                                                                      |
|              | WLAN Assistant | -             | Configure your wireless network settings using the Utilities CD.                                                                                     |
|              | WPS            | -             | Configure your wireless network settings using the one-button push method.                                                                           |
|              | WPS w/PIN Code | -             | Configure the wireless network settings using WPS with a PIN code.                                                                                   |
|              | WLAN Status    | Status        | Display the wireless Ethernet link status.                                                                                                           |
|              |                | Signal        | Display the signal condition.                                                                                                                        |
|              |                | Channel       | Display the channel in use when <i>Status</i> is <i>Active</i> .                                                                                     |
|              |                | Speed         | Display the connection speed when <i>Status</i> is <i>Active</i> .                                                                                   |
|              |                | SSID          | Display SSID.                                                                                                                                        |
|              |                | Comm. Mode    | Display the current Communication Mode.                                                                                                              |
|              | MAC Address    | -             | Display the MAC address of the machine.                                                                                                              |
|              | Set to Default | -             | Restore wireless network settings of your machine to the factory settings.                                                                           |
|              | WLAN Enable    | -             | Turn the wireless interface on or off.                                                                                                               |
| Wi-Fi Direct | Push Button    | -             | Configure your Wi-Fi Direct network settings using the one-button push method quickly.                                                               |
|              | PIN Code       | -             | Configure your Wi-Fi Direct network settings using WPS with a PIN code quickly.                                                                      |
|              | Manual         | -             | Configure your Wi-Fi Direct network settings manually.                                                                                               |
|              | Group Owner    | -             | Set your machine as the Group Owner.                                                                                                                 |
|              | Device Info.   | Device Name   | View your machine's device name.                                                                                                                     |
|              |                | SSID          | Display the Group Owner's SSID.                                                                                                                      |
|              |                | IP Address    | Display your machine's IP Address.                                                                                                                   |
|              | Status Info.   | Status        | Display the Wi-Fi Direct network status.                                                                                                             |



| Level 1       | Level 2      | Level 3 | Description                                                                                                                                                                                     |
|---------------|--------------|---------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Wi-Fi Direct  | Status Info. | Signal  | Display the current Wi-Fi Direct network signal strength.<br>When your machine acts as Group Owner, the LCD always displays <b>Strong</b> .                                                     |
|               |              | Channel | Display the channel in use when the Status is G/O Active or Client Active.                                                                                                                      |
|               |              | Speed   | Display the connection speed when the Status is G/O Active or Client Active.                                                                                                                    |
|               | I/F Enable   | -       | Enable or disable the Wi-Fi Direct connection.                                                                                                                                                  |
| IPsec         | -            | -       | IPsec is an optional security feature of the IP protocol that provides authentication and encryption services. We recommend contacting your network administrator before changing this setting. |
| Network Reset | -            | -       | Restore all network settings of your machine to the factory settings.                                                                                                                           |

<sup>1</sup> On connection to the network, if the machine's 'Boot Method' is 'Auto' the machine will attempt to set the IP address and Subnet Mask from a boot server such as DHCP. If a boot server cannot be found, an APIPA IP address will be allocated, such as 169. 254. [001-254]. [000-255]. If the 'Boot Method' of the machine is set to 'Static' you must manually enter an IP address from the machine's control panel.

### [Reset Menu]

| Level 1       | Description                                                                                              |
|---------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Network       | Restore all network settings of your machine to the factory settings.                                    |
| Factory Reset | Reset the machine and restore the printer settings (including command settings) to the factory settings. |



### Related Information

- [Settings and Features Tables](#)

## Settings Tables (1.8 inch touchscreen models)

Related Models: bizhub 5000i



### [Settings] > [Machine Information]

| Level 2                 | Level 3                   | Descriptions                                          |
|-------------------------|---------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------|
| Print Settings          | -                         | Print the Printer Settings page.                      |
| Print NetSetting        | -                         | Print the Network Configuration Report.               |
| Print WLANReport        | -                         | Print the wireless LAN connectivity diagnosis result. |
| Print File List         | -                         | Print a list of data saved in the memory.             |
| Test Print              | -                         | Print the test page.                                  |
| Drum Dot Print          | -                         | Print the Drum Dot Check Sheet.                       |
| Print Font              | PCL                       | Print the font list.                                  |
|                         | PS                        | Print the font list.                                  |
| Serial No.              | -                         | Display the machine's serial number.                  |
| Version                 | Main Version              | Display the main firmware version.                    |
|                         | Sub1 Version              | Display the sub firmware version.                     |
| Page Count              | -                         | Display the total printed pages.                      |
| Parts Life <sup>1</sup> | Toner Life                | Display the remaining life of the toner cartridge.    |
|                         | Drum Life                 | Display the remaining life of the imaging unit.       |
|                         | PF KitMP Life             | Display the remaining life of the PF kit MP.          |
|                         | PF Kit1 Life              | Display the remaining life of the PF Kit 1.           |
|                         | PF Kit2 Life <sup>2</sup> | Display the remaining life of the PF Kit 2.           |
|                         | PF Kit3 Life <sup>2</sup> | Display the remaining life of the PF Kit 3.           |
|                         | PF Kit4 Life <sup>2</sup> | Display the remaining life of the PF Kit 4.           |
|                         | Fuser Life                | Display the remaining life of the fuser unit.         |
|                         | Laser Life                | Display the remaining life of the laser unit.         |

<sup>1</sup> Life is approximate and may vary by type of use.

<sup>2</sup> Available if the Optional Tray(s) is installed.



### [Settings] > [Paper Tray]

| Level 2        | Level 3       | Descriptions                                                                                                                   |
|----------------|---------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Tray Use       | -             | Select the tray that will be used.                                                                                             |
| Priority       | -             | When Auto is selected in Tray Use, select the order in which the machine uses paper trays that contain paper of the same size. |
| Skip Tray      | -             | Select a specific tray you do not want to use; if it is loaded with paper of the wrong size.                                   |
| Separator Tray | -             | Select the tray that contains the paper used as the separator paper, which is inserted between each print job.                 |
| 2-sided        | 2-sided Print | Select whether to print on both sides of the paper.                                                                            |

| Level 2          | Level 3             | Descriptions                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
|------------------|---------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 2-sided          | Single Image        | For a print job where the last page is a 1-sided image, select the 1-sided Feed option to reduce printing time.<br><br>When you use Letterhead or Preprinted paper, you must select the 2-sided Feed option. If you select 1-sided Feed for Letterhead or Preprinted paper, the last page will be printed on the reverse side. |
| Paper Type       | MP Tray             | Select the paper type that matches the paper in the MP tray.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
|                  | Tray 1              | Select the paper type that matches the paper in the standard paper tray.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
|                  | Tray 2 <sup>1</sup> | Select the paper type that matches the paper in the Optional Tray (Tray 2).                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
|                  | Tray 3 <sup>1</sup> | Select the paper type that matches the paper in the Optional Tray (Tray 3).                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
|                  | Tray 4 <sup>1</sup> | Select the paper type that matches the paper in the Optional Tray (Tray 4).                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| Paper Size       | MP Tray             | Select the size of paper you loaded in the MP tray.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
|                  | Tray 1              | Select the size of paper you loaded in the standard paper tray.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
|                  | Tray 2 <sup>1</sup> | Select the size of paper you loaded in the Optional Tray (Tray 2).                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
|                  | Tray 3 <sup>1</sup> | Select the size of paper you loaded in the Optional Tray (Tray 3).                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
|                  | Tray 4 <sup>1</sup> | Select the size of paper you loaded in the Optional Tray (Tray 4).                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| Paper Low Notice | Paper Low Notice    | Select whether to display a message telling you that the paper tray is nearly empty.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
|                  | Notice Level        | Select the minimum paper level that will trigger the message.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| Check Size       | -                   | Select whether to display a message telling you to check that the size of the paper in the machine and the machine's Paper Size setting match.                                                                                                                                                                                 |

<sup>1</sup> Available if the Optional Tray(s) is installed.



## [Settings] > [General Setup]

| Level 2        | Level 3        | Level 4   | Descriptions                                                                                                                                                        |
|----------------|----------------|-----------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Local Language | -              | -         | Select the LCD language for your country.                                                                                                                           |
| Resolution     | -              | -         | Choose a print resolution.                                                                                                                                          |
| Density        | -              | -         | Increase or decrease the print density.                                                                                                                             |
| Ecology        | Toner Save     | -         | Increase the page yield of the toner cartridge.                                                                                                                     |
|                | Sleep Time     | -         | Set how much time will pass before the machine enters Power Saving Mode.                                                                                            |
|                | Quiet Mode     | -         | Decrease printing noise.                                                                                                                                            |
|                | Auto Power Off | -         | Set the number of hours that the machine will remain in Deep Sleep Mode before going into Power Off Mode.                                                           |
| Volume         | Beep           | -         | Adjust the beeper volume.                                                                                                                                           |
| Panel Control  | LCD Settings   | Backlight | Adjust the brightness of the LCD backlight.                                                                                                                         |
|                |                | Dim Timer | Set how long the LCD backlight stays on after the last finger press.                                                                                                |
| Setting Lock   | Set Password   | -         | Restrict unauthorised users from changing the machine's settings.                                                                                                   |
|                | Lock Off⇒On    | -         |                                                                                                                                                                     |
| Interface      | Select         | -         | Select the interface to use.<br><br>If you select <i>Auto</i> , the machine changes the interface to USB or Network depending on which interface is receiving data. |
|                | Auto IF Time   | -         | Set the time-out period for the auto interface selection.                                                                                                           |

| Level 2        | Level 3      | Level 4 | Descriptions                                                             |
|----------------|--------------|---------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Interface      | Input Buffer | -       | Increase or decrease the input buffer capacity.                          |
| Delete Storage | Macro ID     | -       | Delete the registered Macro data.                                        |
|                | Font ID      | -       | Delete the registered Font data.                                         |
|                | Format       | -       | Restore the Macro and Font data of your machine to the default settings. |



[Settings] > [Print Menu]

| Level 2        | Level 3       | Descriptions                                                                                                                       |
|----------------|---------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Emulation      | -             | Choose the emulation mode.                                                                                                         |
| Auto Continue  | -             | Select this setting if you want the machine to clear paper size errors or media type errors, and use paper from other trays.       |
| Paper Type     | -             | Set the type of paper.                                                                                                             |
| Paper Size     | -             | Set the size of paper.                                                                                                             |
| Copies         | -             | Set the number of printed pages.                                                                                                   |
| Orientation    | -             | Set pages to print in either portrait or landscape orientation.                                                                    |
| Print Position | X Offset      | Move the print start position (at the top-left corner of pages) horizontally up to -500 (left) to +500 (right) dots in 300 dpi.    |
|                | Y Offset      | Move the print start position (at the top-left corner of pages) vertically up to -500 (up) to +500 (down) dots in 300 dpi.         |
| Auto FF        | -             | Allow the machine to print any remaining data automatically.                                                                       |
| PCL            | Font No.      | Set the font number.                                                                                                               |
|                | Font Pitch    | Set the font pitch.<br>The Font Pitch menu appears when you choose I012 to I018, I031 to I037 or I097 to I109 in Font No. setting. |
|                | Font Point    | Set the font size.<br>The Font Point menu appears when you choose I000 to I011, I019 to I030 or I038 to I096 in Font No. setting.  |
|                | Symbol Set    | Select the symbol or character set.                                                                                                |
|                | Table Print   | Print the code table.                                                                                                              |
|                | Auto LF       | ON: CR -> CR+LF, OFF: CR -> CR                                                                                                     |
|                | Auto CR       | ON: LF -> LF+CR, FF -> FF+CR, or VT -> VT+CR<br>OFF: LF -> LF, FF -> FF, or VT -> VT                                               |
|                | Auto WRAP     | Choose whether a line feed and carriage return will happen when the machine reaches the right margin.                              |
|                | Auto SKIP     | Choose whether a line feed and carriage return will happen when the carriage position reaches the bottom margin.                   |
|                | Left Margin   | Set the left margin at column 0 to 70 columns at 1 cpi.                                                                            |
|                | Right Margin  | Set the right margin at column 10 to 80 columns at 1 cpi.                                                                          |
|                | Top Margin    | Set the top margin distance from the top edge of the paper.                                                                        |
|                | Bottom Margin | Set the bottom margin distance from the bottom edge of the paper.                                                                  |
| Epson FX-850   | Lines         | Set the number of lines on each page.                                                                                              |
|                | Tray Command  | Select this setting if a tray mismatch appears when you use the HP drivers.                                                        |
|                | Font No.      | Set the font number.                                                                                                               |
|                | Font Pitch    | Set the font pitch.                                                                                                                |

| Level 2        | Level 3       | Descriptions                                                                                                                                     |
|----------------|---------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Epson FX-850   |               | The Font Pitch menu appears when you choose I012 to I018, I031 to I037 or I097 to I109 in Font No. setting.                                      |
|                | Font Point    | Set the font size.<br>The Font Point menu appears when you choose I000 to I011, I019 to I030 or I038 to I096 in Font No. setting.                |
|                | Character Set | Select the symbol or character set.                                                                                                              |
|                | Table Print   | Print the code table.                                                                                                                            |
|                | Auto LF       | ON: CR -> CR+LF, OFF: CR -> CR                                                                                                                   |
|                | Auto Mask     | Set the top and bottom margins to two-line each. When you set Auto Mask to On, this setting overrides the Top Margin and Bottom Margin settings. |
|                | Left Margin   | Set the left margin at column 0 to 70 columns at 1 cpi.                                                                                          |
|                | Right Margin  | Set the right margin at column 10 to 80 columns at 1 cpi.                                                                                        |
|                | Top Margin    | Set the top margin distance from the top edge of the paper.                                                                                      |
|                | Bottom Margin | Set the bottom margin distance from the bottom edge of the paper.                                                                                |
|                | Lines         | Set the number of lines on each page.                                                                                                            |
| IBM Proprinter | Font No.      | Set the font number.                                                                                                                             |
|                | Font Pitch    | Set the font pitch.<br>The Font Pitch menu appears when you choose I012 to I018, I031 to I037 or I097 to I109 in Font No. setting.               |
|                | Font Point    | Set the font size.<br>The Font Point menu appears when you choose I000 to I011, I019 to I030 or I038 to I096 in Font No. setting.                |
|                | Character Set | Select the symbol or character set.                                                                                                              |
|                | Table Print   | Print the code table.                                                                                                                            |
|                | Auto LF       | ON: CR -> CR+LF, OFF: CR -> CR                                                                                                                   |
|                | Auto CR       | ON: LF -> LF+CR, FF -> FF+CR, or VT -> VT+CR<br>OFF: LF -> LF, FF -> FF, or VT -> VT                                                             |
|                | Auto Mask     | Set the top and bottom margins to two-line each. When you set Auto Mask to On, this setting overrides the Top Margin and Bottom Margin settings. |
|                | Left Margin   | Set the left margin at column 0 to 70 columns at 1 cpi.                                                                                          |
|                | Right Margin  | Set the right margin at column 10 to 80 columns at 1 cpi.                                                                                        |
|                | Top Margin    | Set the top margin distance from the top edge of the paper.                                                                                      |
|                | Bottom Margin | Set the bottom margin distance from the bottom edge of the paper.                                                                                |
| PS             | Lines         | Set the number of lines on each page.                                                                                                            |
|                | Error Print   | Choose whether the machine prints the error information when errors occur.                                                                       |



[Settings] > [Network]

| Level 2   | Level 3 | Level 4     | Level 5 | Descriptions                                     |
|-----------|---------|-------------|---------|--------------------------------------------------|
| Wired LAN | TCP/IP  | Boot Method | -       | Choose the IP method that best suits your needs. |
|           |         | IP Address  | -       | Enter the IP address.                            |
|           |         | Subnet Mask | -       | Enter the Subnet mask.                           |
|           |         | Gateway     | -       | Enter the Gateway address.                       |

| Level 2   | Level 3        | Level 4            | Level 5   | Descriptions                                                                                                                                                     |
|-----------|----------------|--------------------|-----------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Wired LAN | TCP/IP         | WINS Configuration | -         | Select the WINS configuration mode.                                                                                                                              |
|           |                | WINS Server        | Primary   | Specify the IP address of the primary WINS server.                                                                                                               |
|           |                |                    | Secondary | Specify the IP address of the secondary WINS server.                                                                                                             |
|           |                | DNS Server         | Primary   | Specify the primary DNS server's IP address.                                                                                                                     |
|           |                |                    | Secondary | Specify the secondary DNS server's IP address.                                                                                                                   |
|           |                | IP Boot Tries      | -         | Specify the number of attempts the machine will try to obtain an IP address when the <code>Boot Method</code> is set to any setting except <code>Static</code> . |
|           |                | APIPA              | -         | Allocate the IP address from the link-local address range automatically <sup>1</sup> .                                                                           |
|           |                | IPv6               | -         | Enable or disable the IPv6 protocol.                                                                                                                             |
|           | Ethernet       | -                  | -         | Choose the Ethernet link mode.                                                                                                                                   |
|           | Wired Status   | -                  | -         | Display the Ethernet link status.                                                                                                                                |
|           | MAC Address    | -                  | -         | Display the MAC address of the machine.                                                                                                                          |
|           | Set to Default | -                  | -         | Restore wired network settings of your machine to the factory settings.                                                                                          |
|           | Wired Enable   | -                  | -         | Turn the wired interface on or off.                                                                                                                              |
| WLAN      | TCP/IP         | Boot Method        | -         | Choose the IP method that best suits your needs.                                                                                                                 |
|           |                | IP Address         | -         | Enter the IP address.                                                                                                                                            |
|           |                | Subnet Mask        | -         | Enter the Subnet mask.                                                                                                                                           |
|           |                | Gateway            | -         | Enter the Gateway address.                                                                                                                                       |
|           |                | WINS Configuration | -         | Select the WINS configuration mode.                                                                                                                              |
|           |                | WINS Server        | Primary   | Specify the IP address of the primary WINS server.                                                                                                               |
|           |                |                    | Secondary | Specify the IP address of the secondary WINS server.                                                                                                             |
|           |                | DNS Server         | Primary   | Specify the primary DNS server's IP address.                                                                                                                     |
|           |                |                    | Secondary | Specify the secondary DNS server's IP address.                                                                                                                   |
|           |                | IP Boot Tries      | -         | Specify the number of attempts the machine will try to obtain an IP address when the <code>Boot Method</code> is set to any setting except <code>Static</code> . |
|           |                | APIPA              | -         | Allocate the IP address from the link-local address range automatically <sup>1</sup> .                                                                           |
|           |                | IPv6               | -         | Enable or disable the IPv6 protocol.                                                                                                                             |
|           | Setup Wizard   | -                  | -         | Configure the wireless network settings using the setup wizard.                                                                                                  |
|           | WLAN Assistant | -                  | -         | Configure your wireless network settings using the Utilities CD.                                                                                                 |

| Level 2       | Level 3         | Level 4     | Level 5 | Descriptions                                                                                                                                                                                    |
|---------------|-----------------|-------------|---------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| WLAN          | WPS             | -           | -       | Configure your wireless network settings using the one-button push method.                                                                                                                      |
|               | WPS w/ PIN Code | -           | -       | Configure the wireless network settings using WPS with a PIN code.                                                                                                                              |
|               | WLAN Status     | Status      | -       | Display the wireless Ethernet link status.                                                                                                                                                      |
|               |                 | Signal      | -       | Display the signal condition.                                                                                                                                                                   |
|               |                 | SSID        | -       | Display SSID.                                                                                                                                                                                   |
|               |                 | Comm. Mode  | -       | Display the current Communication Mode.                                                                                                                                                         |
|               | MAC Address     | -           | -       | Display the MAC address of the machine.                                                                                                                                                         |
|               | Set to Default  | -           | -       | Restore wireless network settings of your machine to the factory settings.                                                                                                                      |
|               | WLAN Enable     | -           | -       | Turn the wireless interface on or off.                                                                                                                                                          |
| Wi-Fi Direct  | Push Button     | -           | -       | Configure your Wi-Fi Direct network settings using the one-button push method quickly.                                                                                                          |
|               | PIN Code        | -           | -       | Configure your Wi-Fi Direct network settings using WPS with a PIN code quickly.                                                                                                                 |
|               | Manual          | -           | -       | Configure your Wi-Fi Direct network settings manually.                                                                                                                                          |
|               | Group Owner     | -           | -       | Set your machine as the Group Owner.                                                                                                                                                            |
|               | Device Info.    | Device Name | -       | View your machine's device name.                                                                                                                                                                |
|               |                 | SSID        | -       | Display the Group Owner's SSID.                                                                                                                                                                 |
|               |                 | IP Address  | -       | Display your machine's IP Address.                                                                                                                                                              |
|               | Status Info.    | Status      | -       | Display the Wi-Fi Direct network status.                                                                                                                                                        |
|               |                 | Signal      | -       | Display the current Wi-Fi Direct network signal strength.                                                                                                                                       |
|               | I/F Enable      | -           | -       | Enable or disable the Wi-Fi Direct connection.                                                                                                                                                  |
| NFC           | -               | -           | -       | Turn the ID card function on or off.                                                                                                                                                            |
| Security      | IPsec           | -           | -       | IPsec is an optional security feature of the IP protocol that provides authentication and encryption services. We recommend contacting your network administrator before changing this setting. |
| Network reset | -               | -           | -       | Restore all network settings of your machine to the factory settings.                                                                                                                           |

<sup>1</sup> On connection to the network, if the machine's 'Boot Method' is 'Auto' the machine will attempt to set the IP address and Subnet Mask from a boot server such as DHCP. If a boot server cannot be found, an APIPA IP address will be allocated, such as 169. 254. [001-254]. [000-255]. If the 'Boot Method' of the machine is set to 'Static' you must manually enter an IP address from the machine's control panel.



## [Settings] > [Reset Menu]

| Level 2       | Level 3 | Descriptions                                                                                             |
|---------------|---------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Network       | -       | Restore all network settings of your machine to the factory settings.                                    |
| Factory Reset | -       | Reset the machine and restore the printer settings (including command settings) to the factory settings. |



## Related Information

- [Settings and Features Tables](#)
-



## Features Tables (1.8 inch touchscreen models)

Related Models: bizhub 5000i

### (Toner)

| Level 2                                                                                   | Level 3           | Descriptions                               |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------|--------------------------------------------|
|  (Toner) | <b>Toner Life</b> | View the approximate remaining toner life. |
|                                                                                           | <b>Test Print</b> | Print the test page.                       |

### (Wi-Fi Setup)

| Level 2                                                                                         | Level 3               | Descriptions                                                               |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  (Wi-Fi Setup) | <b>Setup Wizard</b>   | Configure the wireless network settings using the setup wizard.            |
|                                                                                                 | <b>WLAN Assistant</b> | Configure your wireless network settings using the Utilities CD.           |
|                                                                                                 | <b>WPS</b>            | Configure your wireless network settings using the one-button push method. |



### Related Information

- [Settings and Features Tables](#)

## **Change Machine Settings from Your Computer**

- [Change Machine Settings Using Web Based Management](#)
- [Where Can I Find My Machine's Network Settings?](#)
- [Network Management Software and Utilities](#)

## **Change Machine Settings Using Web Based Management**

Web Based Management is a utility that uses a standard web browser to manage your machine using the Hyper Text Transfer Protocol (HTTP) or Hyper Text Transfer Protocol over Secure Socket Layer (HTTPS).

- [What is Web Based Management?](#)
- [Access Web Based Management](#)
- [Set a Login Password for Web Based Management](#)
- [Network Management Software and Utilities](#)

## What is Web Based Management?

Web Based Management is a utility that uses a standard web browser to manage your machine using the Hyper Text Transfer Protocol (HTTP) or Hyper Text Transfer Protocol over Secure Socket Layer (HTTPS). Type your machine's IP address into your web browser to access and change your print server settings.



- We recommend Microsoft Internet Explorer 11/Microsoft Edge for Windows, and Safari 10/11 for Mac. Make sure that JavaScript and Cookies are always enabled in whichever browser you use. If you use different web browser, make sure it is compatible with HTTP 1.0 and HTTP 1.1.
- You must use the TCP/IP protocol on your network and have a valid IP address programmed into the print server and your computer.

The screenshot displays the Web Based Management interface for a device. At the top, there's a header with the device ID 'XXX-XXXX' and a navigation bar with tabs: General, Print, Administrator, and Network. The 'General' tab is selected. On the left, a sidebar lists various settings: Status, Auto Refresh Interval, Maintenance Information, Lists/Reports, Find Device, Contact & Location, Sleep Time, Auto Power Off, Language, Volume, and Panel. The main content area is titled 'Status' and shows the following information:

- Device Status:** A green bar indicates the device is 'Ready'.
- Automatic Refresh:** A radio button interface with 'Off' selected and 'On' as an option.
- Toner Level:** A vertical bar graph showing the toner level, with 'BK' (Black) indicated below it.
- Web Language:** A dropdown menu currently set to 'Auto'.
- Device Location:** Two fields for location information, each with a corresponding icon (a person for 'Contact' and a house for 'Location').

- The actual screen may differ from the screen shown above.
- The following explanations are examples. The available functions vary according to the model.

### General

Use this tab to confirm the current status of your machine and to change basic settings, such as the timer settings.

### Print

Use this tab to confirm and change the print settings.

### Administrator

Use this tab to set the Web Based Management password, reset various settings, and configure the function settings that are mainly used by administrators. You can also use Secure Function Lock to restrict functions according to the user.

### Network

Use this tab to change the network settings, enable or disable the network protocols, and configure the security and certificate settings.



## Related Information

- [Change Machine Settings Using Web Based Management](#)

## Access Web Based Management

- We recommend using the HTTPS security protocol when configuring settings using Web Based Management.
- When you use HTTPS for Web Based Management configuration, your browser will display a warning dialog box.

1. Start your web browser.
2. Type "http://machine's IP address" in your browser's address bar (where "machine's IP address" is the machine's IP address).

For example:

http://192.168.1.2



- If you are using a Domain Name System or enable a NetBIOS name, you can type another name, such as "SharedPrinter" instead of the IP address.

- For example:

http://SharedPrinter

If you enable a NetBIOS name, you can also use the node name.

- For example:

http://KMNxxxxxxxxxxxx

The NetBIOS name can be found in the Network Configuration Report.

3. Type a password if you have set one, and then click . The default password is initpass.

You can now change the print server settings.

If you change the protocol settings, you must restart the machine after clicking **Submit** to activate the configuration.



### Related Information

- [Change Machine Settings Using Web Based Management](#)

#### Related Topics:

- [Print the Network Configuration Report](#)

## Set a Login Password for Web Based Management

We recommend setting a login password to prevent unauthorised access to Web Based Management.

1. Start your web browser.
2. Type "http://machine's IP address" in your browser's address bar (where "machine's IP address" is the machine's IP address).

For example:

http://192.168.1.2



- If you are using a Domain Name System or enable a NetBIOS name, you can type another name, such as "SharedPrinter" instead of the IP address.

- For example:

http://SharedPrinter

If you enable a NetBIOS name, you can also use the node name.

- For example:

http://KMNxxxxxxxxxxxx

The NetBIOS name can be found in the Network Configuration Report.

3. Type a password if you have set one, and then click . The default password is initpass.
4. Click **Administrator**.
5. Type the password you want to use in the **Enter New Password** field (up to 32 characters).
6. Retype the password in the **Confirm New Password** field.
7. Click **Submit**.

In the future, every time you access Web Based Management, type the password in the **Login** field, and then click .

After configuring the settings, log off by clicking .



### Related Information

- [Change Machine Settings Using Web Based Management](#)

## Appendix

- [Specifications](#)
- [How to Enter Text on Your Machine](#)



## Specifications

- >> General Specifications
- >> Print Media Specifications
- >> Printer Specifications
- >> Interface Specifications
- >> Computer Requirements Specifications

### General Specifications

|                                       |                               |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
|---------------------------------------|-------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Printer Type</b>                   |                               | Laser                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| <b>Print Method</b>                   |                               | Electrophotographic Laser Printer                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| <b>Memory Capacity</b>                | <b>Standard</b>               | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(bizhub 4000i)<br/>256 MB</li> <li>(bizhub 5000i)<br/>512 MB</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                     |
| <b>LCD (liquid crystal display)</b>   |                               | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(bizhub 4000i)<br/>16 characters x 1 line</li> <li>(bizhub 5000i)<br/>1.8 in. TFT Colour Touchscreen LCD</li> </ul>                                                                                         |
| <b>Power Source</b>                   |                               | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>110 to 120 V AC 50/60Hz</li> <li>127 V AC 50/60Hz</li> <li>220 to 240 V AC 50/60Hz</li> </ul>                                                                                                               |
| <b>Power Consumption</b><br>(Average) | <b>Peak</b>                   | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(bizhub 4000i)<br/>110 to 120V: Approximately 1,248 W<br/>220 to 240V: Approximately 1,344W</li> <li>(bizhub 5000i)<br/>110 to 120V: Approximately 1,368 W<br/>220 to 240V: Approximately 1,344W</li> </ul> |
|                                       | <b>Printing</b>               | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(bizhub 4000i)<br/>110 to 120V: Approximately 620 W<br/>220 to 240V: Approximately 640W</li> <li>(bizhub 5000i)<br/>110 to 120V: Approximately 700 W<br/>220 to 240V: Approximately 770W</li> </ul>         |
|                                       | <b>Ready</b>                  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Approximately 32 W</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                               |
|                                       | <b>Power Off <sup>1</sup></b> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>110 to 120V: Approximately 0.03 W<br/>220 to 240V: Approximately 0.04W</li> </ul>                                                                                                                           |
| <b>Dimensions</b>                     |                               | Unit: mm <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(bizhub 4000i)<br/>* 373<br/>** 287<br/>**** 388</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                        |

|                                |                       |                              |                                                                    |
|--------------------------------|-----------------------|------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------|
|                                |                       |                              | Unit: mm<br>• (bizhub 5000i)<br>* 400<br>** 288<br>*** 396         |
| <b>Weights (with supplies)</b> |                       |                              | • (bizhub 4000i)<br>12.4 kg<br>• (bizhub 5000i)<br>13.2 kg         |
| <b>Noise Level</b>             | <b>Sound Pressure</b> | <b>Printing</b>              | • (bizhub 4000i)<br>52 dB (A)<br>• (bizhub 5000i)<br>54 dB (A)     |
|                                |                       | <b>Printing (Quiet Mode)</b> | 50 dB (A)                                                          |
|                                |                       | <b>Ready</b>                 | • (bizhub 4000i)<br>34 dB (A)<br>• (bizhub 5000i)<br>35 dB (A)     |
|                                | <b>Sound Power</b>    | <b>Printing</b>              | • (bizhub 4000i)<br>72.5 dB (A)<br>• (bizhub 5000i)<br>73.7 dB (A) |
|                                |                       | <b>Printing (Quiet Mode)</b> | 64.7 dB (A)                                                        |
|                                |                       | <b>Ready</b>                 | • (bizhub 4000i)<br>47 dB (A)<br>• (bizhub 5000i)<br>48 dB (A)     |
| <b>Temperature</b>             | <b>Operating</b>      |                              | 10 to 32.5 °C                                                      |
|                                | <b>Storage</b>        |                              | 0 to 40 °C                                                         |
| <b>Humidity</b>                | <b>Operating</b>      |                              | 10 to 80% (without condensation)                                   |
|                                | <b>Storage</b>        |                              | 35 to 85% (without condensation)                                   |

<sup>1</sup> Power consumption varies slightly depending on the usage environment.

## Print Media Specifications

|                    |                              |                     |                                                                                                                                                                                         |
|--------------------|------------------------------|---------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Paper Input</b> | <b>Paper Tray (Standard)</b> | <b>Paper Type</b>   | Plain Paper (75 to 105 g/m <sup>2</sup> ), Letterhead, Coloured Paper, Thin Paper (60 to 75 g/m <sup>2</sup> ), Recycled Paper, Thick Paper (105 to 120 g/m <sup>2</sup> ) <sup>1</sup> |
|                    |                              | <b>Paper Size</b>   | A4, Letter, A5, A5 (Long Edge), A6, Executive, Legal, Folio, Mexico Legal, India Legal, B5 (JIS)                                                                                        |
|                    |                              | <b>Paper Weight</b> | 60 to 120 g/m <sup>2</sup>                                                                                                                                                              |

|                                 |                                                  |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
|---------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Paper Input</b>              | <b>Paper Tray (Standard)</b>                     | <b>Maximum Paper Capacity</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          | Up to 520 sheets of 80 g/m <sup>2</sup> Plain Paper                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
|                                 | <b>Multi-purpose tray (MP tray)</b>              | <b>Paper Type</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      | Plain Paper (75 to 105 g/m <sup>2</sup> ), Letterhead, Coloured Paper, Thin Paper (60 to 75 g/m <sup>2</sup> ), Thick Paper (105 to 120 g/m <sup>2</sup> ), Thicker Paper (120 to 199 g/m <sup>2</sup> ), Recycled Paper, Bond, Label, Envelope (64 to 90 g/m <sup>2</sup> ), Env.Thin, Env.Thick |
|                                 |                                                  | <b>Paper Size</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      | Width:<br>69.8 to 216 mm<br>Length:<br>127 to 355.6 mm                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
|                                 |                                                  | <b>Paper Weight</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    | 60 to 200 g/m <sup>2</sup>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
|                                 |                                                  | <b>Maximum Paper Capacity</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          | Up to 50 sheets of 80 g/m <sup>2</sup> Plain Paper<br>Envelope: 10 envelopes                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
|                                 | <b>Paper Tray 2, 3, 4 (Optional)<sup>2</sup></b> | <b>Paper Type</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      | Plain Paper (75 to 105 g/m <sup>2</sup> ), Letterhead, Coloured Paper, Thin Paper (60 to 75 g/m <sup>2</sup> ), Recycled Paper, Thick Paper (105 to 120 g/m <sup>2</sup> ) <sup>1</sup>                                                                                                           |
|                                 |                                                  | <b>Paper Size</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      | A4, Letter, A5, Executive, Legal, Folio, Mexico Legal, India Legal, B5 (JIS)                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
|                                 |                                                  | <b>Paper Weight</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    | 60 to 120 g/m <sup>2</sup>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
|                                 |                                                  | <b>Maximum Paper Capacity</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          | (PF-P23)<br>Up to 250 sheets of 80 g/m <sup>2</sup> Plain Paper<br>(PF-P24)<br>Up to 520 sheets of 80 g/m <sup>2</sup> Plain Paper                                                                                                                                                                |
| <b>Paper Output<sup>3</sup></b> | <b>Face Down Output Tray</b>                     | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(bizhub 4000i)<br/>Up to 150 Sheets of 80 g/m<sup>2</sup> Plain Paper (face down delivery to the face down output paper tray)</li> <li>(bizhub 5000i)<br/>Up to 250 Sheets of 80 g/m<sup>2</sup> Plain Paper (face down delivery to the face down output paper tray)</li> </ul> |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
|                                 | <b>Face Up Output Tray</b>                       | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(bizhub 4000i)<br/>One sheet (face up delivery to the face up output tray)</li> <li>(bizhub 5000i)<br/>Up to 10 sheets (face up delivery to the face up output tray)</li> </ul>                                                                                                 |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| <b>2-sided</b>                  | <b>Automatic 2-sided Printing</b>                | <b>Paper Type</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      | Plain Paper (75 to 105 g/m <sup>2</sup> ), Letterhead, Colored Paper, Thin Paper (60 to 75 g/m <sup>2</sup> ), Recycled Paper                                                                                                                                                                     |
|                                 |                                                  | <b>Paper Size</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      | A4                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
|                                 |                                                  | <b>Paper Weight</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    | 60 to 105 g/m <sup>2</sup>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |

<sup>1</sup> Open the back cover (face up output tray) before printing to let the printed paper exit onto the face up output tray.

<sup>2</sup> You can install up to two Lower Trays 250 sheets or 520 sheets or three Lower Trays 250 sheets (only for bizhub 5000i)

<sup>3</sup> For labels, we recommend removing the printed sheets from the output paper tray immediately after they exit the machine to avoid the possibility of smudging.

## Printer Specifications

|                                |                                    |
|--------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| <b>Automatic 2-sided Print</b> | Yes                                |
| <b>Emulation</b>               | PCL6, PostScript 3, PDF version1.7 |

|                                      |                      |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
|--------------------------------------|----------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Resolution</b>                    |                      | Up to 1200 x 1200 dpi                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| <b>Print Speed</b> <sup>1 2</sup>    | <b>1-sided print</b> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(bizhub 4000i)<br/>Up to 42 pages/minute (Letter size)<br/>Quiet Mode: Up to 26 pages/minute (Letter size)<br/>Up to 40 pages/minute (A4 size)<br/>Quiet Mode: Up to 25 pages/minute (A4 size)</li> <li>(bizhub 5000i)<br/>Up to 52 pages/minute (Letter size)<br/>Quiet Mode: Up to 26 pages/minute (Letter size)<br/>Up to 50 pages/minute (A4 size)<br/>Quiet Mode: Up to 25 pages/minute (A4 size)</li> </ul> |
|                                      | <b>2-sided Print</b> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(bizhub 4000i)<br/>Up to 20 sides/minute (Letter or A4 size)</li> <li>(bizhub 5000i)<br/>Up to 24 sides/minute (Letter or A4 size)</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| <b>First Print Time</b> <sup>3</sup> |                      | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(bizhub 4000i)<br/>Less than 7.2 seconds</li> <li>(bizhub 5000i)<br/>Less than 7.5 seconds</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |

<sup>1</sup> The print speed may change depending on the type of document you print.

<sup>2</sup> Print speed may be slower when the machine is connected by wireless LAN.

<sup>3</sup> From Ready mode and standard tray

## Interface Specifications

|                           |              |                                                                                      |
|---------------------------|--------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>USB</b> <sup>1 2</sup> | All          | Hi-Speed USB 2.0<br>Use a USB 2.0 interface cable that is no longer than 6 ft (2 m). |
| <b>LAN</b>                | All          | 10BASE-T/100BASE-TX/1000Base-T <sup>3 4</sup>                                        |
| <b>Wireless LAN</b>       | All          | IEEE 802.11b/g/n (Infrastructure/Ad-hoc Mode)<br>IEEE 802.11g/n (Wi-Fi Direct)       |
| <b>ID card</b>            | bizhub 5000i | Yes                                                                                  |

<sup>1</sup> Your machine has a USB 2.0 Hi-Speed interface. The machine can also be connected to a computer that has a USB 1.1 interface.

<sup>2</sup> Third party USB ports are not supported.

<sup>3</sup> Use a straight-through Category 5 (or greater) twisted-pair cable.

<sup>4</sup> When you connect the machine to a Gigabit Ethernet Network, use network devices complying with the 1000BASE-T specification.

## Computer Requirements Specifications

### Supported Operating Systems And Software Functions

| Computer Platform & Operating System Version |                     | PC Interface     |                                                      |                         | Processor                                        |
|----------------------------------------------|---------------------|------------------|------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------|--------------------------------------------------|
|                                              |                     | USB <sup>1</sup> | 10Base-T/<br>100Base-TX/<br>1000Base-T<br>(Ethernet) | Wireless<br>802.11b/g/n |                                                  |
| Windows Operating System                     | Windows 7           | Printing         |                                                      |                         | 32 bit (x86)(SP3) or 64 bit (x64)(SP2) processor |
|                                              | Windows 8.1         |                  |                                                      |                         |                                                  |
|                                              | Windows 10          |                  |                                                      |                         |                                                  |
|                                              | Windows Server 2008 | N/A              | Printing                                             |                         | 32 bit (x86) or 64 bit (x64) processor           |

|                      |                        |          |  |                        |
|----------------------|------------------------|----------|--|------------------------|
|                      | Windows Server 2008 R2 |          |  | 64 bit (x64) processor |
|                      | Windows Server 2012    |          |  |                        |
|                      | Windows Server 2012 R2 |          |  |                        |
|                      | Windows Server 2016    |          |  |                        |
|                      | Windows Server 2019    |          |  |                        |
| Mac Operating System | OS X v10.10.x          | Printing |  | Intel® Processor       |
|                      | OS X v10.11.x          |          |  |                        |
|                      | macOS v10.12.x         |          |  |                        |
|                      | macOS v10.13.x         |          |  |                        |
|                      | macOS v10.14.x         |          |  |                        |

<sup>1</sup> Third party USB ports are not supported.

All trademarks, brand and product names are the property of their respective companies.



## Related Information

- [Appendix](#)

## How to Enter Text on Your Machine

>> bizhub 4000i

>> bizhub 5000i

### bizhub 4000i

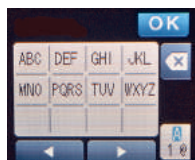
When setting certain options, such as the Network Key, you must enter characters on the machine:

- Hold down or repeatedly press ▲ or ▼ to select a character from this list:  
0123456789abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyzABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ(space)!"#\$%&'()\*+,-./:;<=>?  
@[]^\_
- Press **OK** when the character or symbol you want is displayed, and then enter the next character.
- Press **Back** to delete characters entered incorrectly.

### bizhub 5000i

When text is required, a keyboard appears on your machine's LCD.

- The characters may differ depending on your country.
- The keyboard layout may differ depending on the operation you perform.



- Press  to cycle between letters, numbers and special characters.
- To move the cursor to the left or right, press ◀ or ▶.

#### Inserting spaces

- To enter a space, press  twice to choose special characters, then press the space button.

#### Making corrections

- If you entered a character incorrectly and want to change it, press ◀ or ▶ to move the cursor to the incorrect character and press . Enter the correct character.
- To insert a character, press ◀ or ▶ to move the cursor to the correct place, and then enter the character.
- Press  for each character you want to erase, or press and hold  to erase all the characters.



### Related Information

- [Appendix](#)

#### Related Topics:

- [Configure Your Machine for a Wireless Network in Ad-Hoc Mode Using an Existing SSID](#)
- [Configure Your Machine for a Wireless Network Using the Machine's Control Panel Setup Wizard](#)
- [Configure Your Machine for a Wireless Network in Ad-Hoc Mode Using a New SSID](#)
- [Configure Your Machine for a Wireless Network When the SSID Is Not Broadcast](#)

## Glossary

---

This is a comprehensive list of features and terms that appear in manuals. Availability of these features depends on the model you purchased.

**A B C D E G H I L M N O P R S T V W**

### A

- [Active Directory Authentication](#)
- [Ad-Hoc Mode](#)
- [AES](#)
- [APIPA](#)
- [ARP](#)
- [Authentication](#)

### B

- [BOOTP](#)

### C

- [CA](#)
- [CA Certificate](#)
- [Certificate](#)
- [Channels](#)
- [CIFS](#)
- [CSR](#)
- [Custom Raw Port](#)

### D

- [Density](#)
- [DHCP](#)
- [DNS Client](#)

- [DNS Server](#)

## E

- [Encryption](#)

## G

- [Gateway](#)

## H

- [HTTP \(Web Server\)](#)
- [HTTPS](#)

## I

- [IEEE 802.1x](#)
- [Infrastructure Mode](#)
- [IP Address](#)
- [IPP](#)
- [IPPS](#)
- [IPsec](#)
- [IPv6](#)

## L

- [LEAP](#)
- [LLMNR](#)
- [LPD](#)
- [LPR](#)

## M

- [MAC Address](#)
- [mDNS](#)



## N

- [NetBIOS Name Resolution](#)
- [Network Configuration Report](#)
- [Network Key](#)
- [Network Shared Printing](#)
- [Node Name](#)

## O

- [Open System](#)

## P

- [PEAP](#)
- [Peer-to-Peer](#)
- [Protocols](#)
- [Public Key Cryptosystem](#)

## R

- [RARP](#)
- [Resolution](#)

## S

- [Secure Function Lock 3.0](#)
- [Settings Tables](#)
- [Shared Key Cryptosystem](#)
- [SMTP Client](#)
- [SMTP over SSL](#)
- [SMTP-AUTH](#)
- [SNMP](#)
- [SNMPv3](#)

- [SNTP](#)
- [SSID](#)
- [SSL/TLS](#)
- [Store Print Log to Network](#)
- [Subnet Mask](#)

## T

- [TCP/IP](#)
- [TELNET](#)
- [TKIP](#)

## V

- [Vertical Pairing](#)

## W

- [Web Based Management](#)
- [WEP](#)
- [Wi-Fi Direct<sup>®</sup>](#)
- [WINS](#)
- [WINS Server](#)
- [WLAN Report](#)
- [WPA-PSK/WPA2-PSK Authentication Method](#)
- [WPS](#)

## Active Directory Authentication

Active Directory Authentication restricts the use of this machine. You cannot use your machine until you log on to the machine using a user ID and password.

## Ad-Hoc Mode

The mode of operation in a wireless network, in which all devices (machines and computers) are connected without an access point/router.

## AES

Advanced Encryption Standard (AES) is the Wi-Fi®-authorised strong encryption standard.

## APIPA

If you do not assign an IP address manually or automatically (using a DHCP, BOOTP, or RARP server), the Automatic Private IP Addressing (APIPA) protocol will automatically assign an IP address from the range 169.254.1.0 to 169.254.254.255.

## ARP

Address Resolution Protocol (ARP) performs mapping of an IP address to a MAC address in a TCP/IP network.

## Authentication

Most wireless networks use some kind of security settings. These security settings define the authentication (how the device identifies itself to the network) and encryption (how the data is encrypted as it is sent on the network). If you do not correctly specify these options when you are configuring your wireless machine, it will not be able to connect to the wireless network. Therefore, care must be taken when configuring these options.

### Authentication Methods for a Personal Wireless Network

A personal wireless network is a small network (such as a home wireless network) without IEEE 802.1x support.

- Open system

Wireless devices are allowed to access the network without any authentication.

- Shared key

A secret pre-determined key is shared by all devices that will access the wireless network. This machine uses the WEP key as the pre-determined key.

- WPA-PSK/WPA2-PSK

Enables a Wi-Fi Protected Access® Pre-shared key (WPA-PSK/WPA2-PSK), which enables this machine to associate with access points using TKIP for WPA-PSK or AES for WPA-PSK and WPA2-PSK (WPA-Personal).

### Authentication Methods for an Enterprise Wireless Network

An enterprise wireless network is a large network, for example using your machine in a business enterprise wireless network, with IEEE 802.1x support. If you configure your machine in an IEEE 802.1x supported wireless network, you can use the following authentication methods.

- LEAP
- EAP-FAST

- PEAP
- EAP-TTLS
- EAP-TLS



The authentication methods above use the user ID less than 64 characters and a password of less than 32 characters in length.

## BOOTP

The Bootstrap Protocol (BOOTP) is a network protocol used by a network client to obtain an IP Address from a configuration server.



To use BOOTP, contact your network administrator.

## CA

A Certificate Authority (CA) is an entity that issues digital certificates (especially X.509 certificates) and vouches for the binding between the data items in a certificate.

## CA Certificate

A CA Certificate is the certification that identifies the CA itself and owns its private key. A CA Certificate verifies a certificate issued by the CA.

## Certificate

A Certificate is the information that binds together a public key with an identity. The certificate can be used to verify that a public key belongs to an individual. The format is defined by the X.509 standard.

## Channels

Wireless networks use channels. Each wireless channel is on a different frequency. There are up to 14 different channels that can be used when using a wireless network. However, in many countries the number of channels available is restricted.

## CIFS

The Common Internet File System (CIFS) is the standard way that computer users share files and printers in Windows.

## CSR

A Certificate Signing Request (CSR) is a message sent from an applicant to a Certificate Authority (CA) to apply for issue of a certificate. The CSR contains information identifying the applicant, the public key generated by the applicant and the digital signature of the applicant.

## Custom Raw Port

Custom raw port is a commonly used printing protocol on a TCP/IP network that enables interactive data transmission. Default is Port 9100.

## Density

Changing the Density makes the whole image lighter or darker.

## DHCP

The Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol (DHCP) is a network protocol that is used to configure network devices so that they can communicate on an IP Network.



To use DHCP, contact your network administrator.

## DNS Client

The print server supports the Domain Name System (DNS) client feature. This feature allows the print server to communicate with other devices using its DNS name.

## DNS Server

The Domain Name System (DNS) is a technology to manage the names of web sites and internet domains. A DNS server allows your computer to find its IP address automatically.

## Encryption

Most wireless networks use some kind of security settings. These security settings define the authentication (how the device identifies itself to the network) and encryption (how the data is encrypted as it is sent on the network). If you do not correctly specify these options when you are configuring your wireless machine, it will not be able to connect to the wireless network. Therefore, care must be taken when configuring these options.

### Encryption Methods for a Personal Wireless Network

A personal wireless network is a small network (such as a home wireless network) without IEEE 802.1x support.

- None

No encryption method is used.

- WEP

When using Wired Equivalent Privacy (WEP) the data is transmitted and received with a secured key.

- TKIP

Temporal Key Integrity Protocol (TKIP) provides per-packet key mixing a message integrity check and rekeying mechanism.

- AES

Advanced Encryption Standard (AES) provides stronger data protection using a symmetric-key encryption.



- IEEE 802.11n does not support either WEP or TKIP as an encryption method.
- To connect to your wireless network using IEEE 802.11n, we recommend selecting AES.

### Encryption Methods for an Enterprise Wireless Network

An enterprise wireless network is a large network, for example using your machine in a business enterprise wireless network, with IEEE 802.1x support. If you configure your machine in an IEEE 802.1x supported wireless network, you can use the following encryption methods.

- TKIP
- AES
- CKIP

The original key Integrity Protocol for LEAP by Cisco Systems, Inc.

## Gateway

A gateway is a network point that acts as an entrance to another network and sends data transmitted via the network to an exact destination. The router knows where to direct data that arrives at the gateway. If a destination is located on an external network, the router transmits data to the external network. If your network communicates with other networks, you may need to configure the Gateway IP address. If you do not know the Gateway IP address, then contact your Network Administrator.

## HTTP (Web Server)

Hypertext Transfer Protocol (HTTP) is used to transmit the data between a web server and a web browser. The print server is equipped with a built-in web server that allows you to monitor its status or change some of its configuration settings using a web browser.

## HTTPS

HTTPS (HTTP over SSL/TLS) is the version of the Hypertext Transfer Protocol (HTTP) that uses SSL/TLS so that web content is transferred and displayed securely.

## IEEE 802.1x

IEEE 802.1x is a networking authentication standard used to connect to a wired or wireless LAN. It restricts connections which are not authentic and only users authenticated by a central authority are allowed to be connected.

## Infrastructure Mode

The mode of operation in a wireless network, in which all devices (machines and computers) are connected via an access point/router.

## IP Address

An Internet Protocol (IP) address is a series of numbers that identifies each device connected to a network. An IP address consists of four numbers separated by dots. Each number is between 0 and 255.

Example: In a small network, you would normally change the final number.

192.168.1.1

192.168.1.2

192.168.1.3

How the IP address is assigned to your print server:

If you have a DHCP/BOOTP/RARP server in your network, the print server will automatically obtain its IP address from that server.



On smaller networks, the DHCP server may also be the Router.

If you do not have a DHCP/BOOTP/RARP server, the Automatic Private IP Addressing (APIPA) protocol will automatically assign an IP address from the range 169.254.1.0 to 169.254.254.255.

## IPP

The Internet Printing Protocol (IPP Version 1.0) allows you to print documents directly to any accessible machine via the Internet.

## IPPS

IPPS (Internet Printing Protocol) is the printing protocol that uses SSL. IPPS is used to send and receive printing data and manage printing devices.

## IPsec

IPsec is an optional security feature of the IP protocol that provides authentication and encryption services.

## IPv6

IPv6 is the next generation Internet protocol.

## LEAP

Lightweight Extensible Authentication Protocol (LEAP) is a proprietary EAP method developed by Cisco Systems, Inc. that uses a user ID and password for authentication. LEAP is used in wireless networks.

## LLMNR

The Link-Local Multicast Name Resolution (LLMNR) protocol resolves the names of neighboring computers, if the network does not have a Domain Name System (DNS) server. The LLMNR Responder feature works in both the IPv4 or IPv6 environment when using Windows.

## LPD

Line Printer Daemon (LPD or LPR) protocol is a commonly-used printing protocol on a TCP/IP network, mainly for UNIX®-based operating systems.

## LPR

Line Printer Daemon (LPR or LPD) protocol is a commonly-used printing protocol on a TCP/IP network.

## MAC Address

The MAC Address (Ethernet Address) is a unique number assigned for the machine's network interface.

## mDNS

Multicast DNS (mDNS) allows the print server to configure itself to work in an OS X Simple Network Configuration system automatically.

## NetBIOS Name Resolution

Network Basic Input/Output System (NetBIOS) name resolution enables you to obtain the IP address of the other device using its NetBIOS name during the network connection.

## Network Configuration Report

The Network Configuration Report prints a report listing the current network configuration, including the network print server settings.

## Network Key

The Network Key is a password, which is used when the data is encrypted or decrypted. The Network Key is also described as the Password, Security Key, or Encryption Key. The table shows the number of characters of the key to use for each setting.

### Open system/Shared key with WEP

This key is a 64-bit or a 128-bit value that must be entered in an ASCII or hexadecimal format.

|               | ASCII                                                                      | Hexadecimal                                                                                            |
|---------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 64 (40) bit   | Uses five text characters.<br>For example, "WSLAN" (case-sensitive).       | Uses 10 digits of hexadecimal data.<br>For example, "71f2234aba" (not case-sensitive).                 |
| 128 (104) bit | Uses 13 text characters.<br>For example, "Wirelesscomms" (case-sensitive). | Uses 26 digits of hexadecimal data.<br>For example, "71f2234ab56cd709e5412aa2ba" (not case-sensitive). |

### WPA-PSK/WPA2-PSK and TKIP or AES

Uses a Pre-Shared Key (PSK) that is eight or more characters in length, up to a maximum of 63 characters.

## Network Shared Printing

Network Shared Printing is a type of printing in a network shared environment. In a network shared environment, each computer sends data via a server or print server.

## Node Name

The Node Name is a machine name on the network. This name is often referred to as a NetBIOS name; it will be the name that is registered by the WINS server on your network. We recommend the name "KMNxxxxxxxxxxx" for a wired network or "KMWxxxxxxxxxxx" for a wireless network (where "xxxxxxxxxxx" is your machine's MAC address / ethernet address.)



## Open System

Open System is one of the network authentication methods. Under open system authentication, any wireless devices are allowed to access the network without requiring a WEP key.

## PEAP

Protected Extensible Authentication Protocol (PEAP) is a version of EAP method developed by Cisco Systems, Inc., Microsoft Corporation and RSA Security. PEAP creates an encrypted Secure Sockets Layer (SSL)/Transport Layer Security (TLS) tunnel between a client and an authentication server, for sending a user ID and password. PEAP provides mutual authentication between the server and the client.

This machine supports the following inner authentications:

- PEAP/MS-CHAPv2
- PEAP/GTC

## Peer-to-Peer

Peer-to-Peer is a type of printing in a peer-to-peer environment. In a peer-to-peer environment, each computer sends and receives data directly to and from each device. There is no central server controlling access or machine sharing.

## Protocols

Protocols are the standardised sets of rules for transmitting data on a network. Protocols allow users to gain access to network-connected resources. The print server used on your machine supports the Transmission Control Protocol/Internet Protocol (TCP/IP) protocol.

## Public Key Cryptosystem

A Public Key Cryptosystem is a modern branch of cryptography in which the algorithms employ a pair of keys (a public key and a private key) and use a different component of the pair for different steps of the algorithm.

## RARP

Reverse Address Resolution Protocol (RARP) finds the logical address for a machine that knows only its physical address.



To use RARP, contact your network administrator.

## Resolution

The number of vertical and horizontal lines per inch.

## Secure Function Lock 3.0

Secure Function Lock 3.0 increases security by restricting the use of functions.

## Settings Tables

At-a-glance instructions that show all the settings and options that are available for setting up your machine.

## Shared Key Cryptosystem

A Shared Key Cryptosystem is a branch of cryptography involving algorithms that use the same key for two different steps of the algorithm (such as encryption and decryption).

## SMTP Client

Simple Mail Transfer Protocol (SMTP) client is used to send emails via the Internet or Intranet.

## SMTP over SSL

SMTP over SSL feature enables sending encrypted email using SSL.

## SMTP-AUTH

SMTP Authentication (SMTP-AUTH) expands SMTP (the Internet email sending protocol) to include an authentication method that ensures the true identity of the sender is known.

## SNMP

The Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP) is used to manage network devices including computers, routers and network-ready machines.

## SNMPv3

Simple Network Management Protocol version 3 (SNMPv3) provides user authentication and data encryption to manage network devices securely.

## SNTP

The Simple Network Time Protocol (SNTP) is used to synchronize computer clocks on a TCP/IP network. You can configure the SNTP settings using Web Based Management.

## SSID

Each wireless network has its own unique network name and it is technically referred to as a Service Set Identifier (SSID). The SSID is a 32-byte or less value and is assigned to the access point. The wireless network devices you want to associate to the wireless network should match the access point. The access point and wireless network devices regularly send wireless packets (referred to as beacons), which contain the SSID information. When your wireless network device receives a beacon, you can identify the wireless network that is close enough for the radio waves to reach your device.

## SSL/TLS

Secure Socket Layer (SSL) or Transport Layer Security (TLS) is an effective method of protecting data that is sent over a local or wide area network. SSL/TLS works by encrypting data, such as a print job, sent over a network, so anyone trying to capture it will not be able to read it .

SSL/TLS can be configured on both wired and wireless networks and will work with other forms of security including WPA keys and firewalls.

## Store Print Log to Network

The Store Print Log to Network feature allows you to save the print log file from your machine to a network server using CIFS.

## Subnet Mask

A subnet mask allows you to identify which part of an IP address is used as the network address and which part is used as the host address.

In the following example, the last segment of the IP address is known as the host address and the first three segments are the network address.

Example: Computer 1 can talk to Computer 2

- Computer 1  
IP Address: 192.168.1.2  
Subnet Mask: 255.255.255.0
- Computer 2  
IP Address: 192.168.1.3  
Subnet Mask: 255.255.255.0



0 denotes that there is no limit to communication at this part of the address.

## TCP/IP

Transmission Control Protocol/Internet Protocol (TCP/IP) is the most popular set of protocols used for communication, such as Internet and email. This protocol can be used in almost all operating systems, including Windows, Windows Server, OS X and Linux®.

## TELNET

The TELNET protocol allows you to control the remote network devices on a TCP/IP network from your computer.

## TKIP

Temporal Key Integrity Protocol (TKIP) is one of the encryption methods adopted by WPA™ to be used in a wireless network. TKIP provides per-packet key mixing, a message integrity check and rekeying mechanism.

## Vertical Pairing

Vertical Pairing is a technology for Windows that allows your Vertical Pairing-supported wireless machine to connect to your Infrastructure network using the PIN Method of Wi-Fi Protected Setup™ and the Web Services feature. It also enables printer driver installation from the printer icon in the **Add a device** screen.

## Web Based Management

A standard Web Browser can be used to manage your machine using the Hyper Text Transfer Protocol (HTTP) or Hyper Text Transfer Protocol over Secure Socket Layer (HTTPS). You can perform the function listed or get the following information from a machine on your network using a web browser:

- Machine status information
- Change network settings, such as TCP/IP information
- Configure Gigabit Ethernet
- Configure Secure Function Lock 3.0
- Configure Store Print Log to Network
- Configure LDAP
- Software version information of the machine and print server
- Change network and machine configuration details



To use Web Based Management, you must use the TCP/IP protocol on your network and have a valid IP address programmed into the print server and your computer.

## WEP

Wired Equivalent Privacy (WEP) is one of the encryption methods used in a wireless network. When using WEP, the data is transmitted and received with a secure key.

## Wi-Fi Direct®

Wi-Fi Direct is one of the wireless configuration methods developed by the Wi-Fi Alliance®. This type of connection is a Wi-Fi standard that allows devices to connect with each other without a wireless access point, using secured method.

## WINS

Windows Internet Name Service (WINS) is an information-providing service for NetBIOS name resolution. It consolidates an IP address and a NetBIOS name that is in the local network.

## WINS Server

Windows Internet Name Service (WINS) Server maps IP addresses to computer names (NetBIOS names) in a Windows network.

## WLAN Report

The WLAN Report prints your machine's wireless status report. If the wireless connection fails, check the error code on the printed report.

## **WPA-PSK/WPA2-PSK Authentication Method**

WPA-PSK/WPA2-PSK authentication method enables a Wi-Fi Protected Access® Pre-shared key (WPA-PSK/WPA2-PSK), which enables the wireless machine to associate with access points using TKIP for WPA-PSK or AES for WPA-PSK and WPA2-PSK (WPA-Personal).

## **WPS**

Wi-Fi Protected Setup™ (WPS) is a standard that allows the setup of secured wireless networks. WPS was created by the Wi-Fi Alliance® in 2007.

